lassified in Part - Sanitized Copy Approved t	for Release @ 50-Yr 2013/10/28 : CIA-	RDP81-01043R	002500140008
	The street states as and a street street street street as a street street street as a street	And the second s	and and and
erit			
			STAT
İ		•	STAT
	THE THEORY OF OPTIMUM NOISE IMMUNIT	r <b>r</b>	
	by		
	V. A. KOTEL'NIKOV		
			CTAT
			STAT
	•		
			STAT
·			
And the second s	and the second		

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>v</b> i1	ı
PREFACE	•
TRANSLATOR'S PREFACE	•
PART I	
AUXILIARY MATERIAL	
CHAPTER 1	
INTRODUCTION	
1_1 Methods of combating noise	1
1-2. Classification of noise	1
1-3. Vegsares and signals	2
1-4. The contents of this book	3
CHAPTER 2	
AUXILIARY MATHEMATICAL MATERIAL	
2-1. Some definitions	5
2-2. Representation of a function as a linear combination of	-
outhonormal functions	7
2-3. Normal fluctuation noise	9
2-4. Representation of normal fluctuation noise as a	13
Fourierseries	_
2-5. Linear functions of independent normal random variables	16
2.5 The probability that normal fluctuation noise falls	17
in a given regionaccessossossossossossossossossossossossosso	19
2-7. Geometric interpretation of our results	17
PART II	
TRANSMISSION OF DISCRETE MESSAGES	
CHAPTER 3	
THE IDEAL RECEIVER FOR DISCRETE SIGNALS	
3-1. Discrete messages and signals	21
wo musideal receiversessessessessessessessessessessessesse	
3-3. Geometric interpretation of the material of chapter 3	25
CHAPTER 4	
NOISE IMMUNITY FOR SIGNALS WITH TWO DISCRETE VALUES	۰,
ne hebility of error for the ideal receiver	20
4-2. Influence of the ratio P(A <sub>1</sub> )/P(A <sub>2</sub> )	20

4-3. Optimum noise immunity for transmission with a passive space	31.
4-4. Optimum noise immunity for the classical telegraph signal	32
4-5. Noise immunity for the classical telegraph signal and	
reception with a synchronous detector	33
4-6. Noise immunity for the classical telegraph signal and	
reception with an ordinary detector	37
4-7. Results on the noise immunity of systems with a passive space	39
4-8. The optimum communication system with an active space	40
4-9. Noise immunity for frequency shift keying	41
4-10. Optimum noise immunity for normal fluctuation noise	
with frequency-dependent intensity	45
4-11. Geometric interpretation of the material of chapter 4	46
CHAPTER 5	
NOISE IMMUNITY FOR SIGNALS WITH MANY DISCRETE VALUES	
5-1. General statement of the problem	47
5-2. Optimum noise immunity for orthogonal equiprobable	
signals with the same energy	48
5-3. Example of telegraphy using 32 orthogonal signals	49
5-4. Optimum noise immunity for compound signals	51
5-5. Example of a five-valued code	53
5-6. The optimum system for signals with many discrete values	54
5-7. Approximate evaluation of optimum noise immunity	58
5-8. Example of the transmission of numerals by Morse code	59
PART III	
TRANSMISSION OF SEPARATE PARAMETER VALUES	
CHAPTER 6	
GENERAL THEORY OF THE INFLUENCE OF NOISE ON THE TRANSMISSION OF SEPAR	RATE
PARAMETER VALUES	
6-1. General considerations	63
6-2. Determination of the probability of the transmitted parameter	64
6-3. The function $P_{x}(\lambda)$ near the most probable value $\lambda_{xm}$	66
6-4. Error and optimum noise immunity in the presence of	
low intensity noise	67
6-5. Second method of determining the error and optimum noise	
immunity in the presence of low intensity noise	69
6-6. Summary of chapter 6	72
6-7. Geometric interpretation of the material of chapter 6	73

CHAPTER 7
THE NOISE DESINITY OF VARIOUS SYSTEMS FOR TRANSMITTING
TATUES IN THE PRESENCE OF LOW INTERSTIT ROLL
7-1. Amplitude modulation
7-2. Linear modulation
7-3. General case of pulse time modulation (optimum noise immunity) 77 7-4. Special case of pulse time modulation (poise immunity)
7-4. Special case of pulse time modulation (noise immunity
7-1. Special case of pulso time modulation (noise immunity 7-5. Special case of pulso time modulation (noise immunity 79
7-5. Special case of pulse time modulations (2007)
Limo modillation thouse in the contract of
1 1-1:00 (monara) CASO/000000000000000000000000000000000000
mmodulation (special case)
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
7-9. Raising the noise immunity without and length, or bandwidth of the signal
CHAPTER 8
NOISE IMMINITY FOR TRANSMISSION OF SEPARATE PARAMETER
VALUES IN THE PRESENCE OF STRONG NOISE
a comple for evaluating the
8-3. Pulse time modulation
8-4. Frequency modulation roise immunity without increasing
8-4. Frequency modulations to the noise immunity without increasing 8-5. The system for raising the noise immunity without increasing
8-5. The system for raising the horse lands
the energy, length, or bandwidth of the results of chapter 8
PART IV
TRANSMISSION OF WAVEFORMS
CHAPTER 9
GENERAL THEORY OF THE INFLUENCE OF WEAK
NOISE ON THE TRANSMISSION OF WAVEFORMS
the transmitted have
- LL - IAGG! TAGG! VUL - O - O - O - O - O - O - O - O - O -
9-5. The error for ideal reception
9-6. Brief summary of chapter

CHAPTER 10
DIRECT MODULATION SYSTEMS
10-1. Pefinition
10-2. Dorivation of basic formulas110
10-3. Optimum noise immunity for amplitude and linear modulation111
10-4. Optimum noise immunity for phase modulation
10-5. Foise immunity for amplitude modulation and ordinary reception 113
10-6. Noise immunity for phase modulation and ordinary reception115
10-7. Noise immunity for single-sideband transmission
CHAPTER 11
PULSE MODULATION SYSTEMS
ll-1. Definition
11-2. A way of realizing the pulse modulation systom
11-3. Optimum noise immunity for the pulse modulation system
11-4. Noise immunity for the receiver analyzed in section 11-2
11-5. Optimum noise immunity for pulse amplitude modulation
11-6. Optimum noise immunity for pulse time modulation
11-7. Optimum noise immunity for pulse frequency modulation
CHAPTER 12
INTEGRAL MODULATION SYSTEMS
12-1. Definition
12-2. Optimum noise immunity for integral modulation systems
12-3. Optimum noise immunity for frequency modulation
CHAPTER 13
EVALUATION OF THE INFLUENCE OF STRONG NOISE ON
THE TRANSMISSION OF WAVEFORMS
13-1. General considerations
13-2. Maximum discrimination of transmitted waveforms
13-3. Maximum discrimination for phase modulation
13-4. Maximum discrimination for weak noise
13-5. Maximum discrimination for weak noise and phase modulation13
APPENDICES
Appendix A. The specific energy of high-frequency waveforms
Appendix B. Representation of normal fluctuation noise by
two amplitude-modulated waves

Appendix C. The instantaneous value of normal fluctuation noise..........139
Appendix D. Normal fluctuation noise made up of arbitrary pulses.........139

### PREFACE

This book is the author's doctoral dissertation, presented in January, 1947, before the academic council of the Kolotov Energy Institute in Moscow. Despite the fact that many works devoted to noise immunity have appeared in the time that has elapsed since the writing of this dissertation, not all of the topics considered in it have as yet appeared in print. Considering the great interest shown in these matters, and also the number of references made to this work in the literature, the author has deemed it appropriate to publish it, without introducing any supplementary material. However, in preparing the manuscript for publication, it was somewhat condensed, at the expense of material of secondary interest. Moreover, Chapter 2, which contains auxiliary mathematical material, has been revised somewhat, to make it easier reading, and some of the material has been relegated to the appendices.

The author

## TRANSLATOR'S PREFACE

This translation is as faithful as is consistent with an English style that is not overly turgid. How this was achieved will be apparent to anyone familiar with the stylistic peculiarities of scientific Russian. I have occasionally added footnotes where I thought the text needed some clarification. These comments have been indicated by the word "translator" in parentheses. I have also corrected numerous typographical errors appearing in the mathematical expressions of the original text.

R. A. S.

### PART I

### AUXILIARY MATERIAL

### CHAPTER 1

### INTRODUCTION

### 1-1. Wethods of combating noise

Ordinarily, a radio receiver is acted upon not only by disturbances (signals) produced by the radio transmitter, but also by disturbances (noise) produced by a large variety of sources. The noise combines with the signals and corrupts them; in the case of telegraphic reception this leads to errors, and in the case of telephonic reception to background noise, static, etc. When the signals are too small compared to the noise, reception becomes impossible.

The following mothods of combating noise are used:

- 1. Decreasing the strength of the noise by taking action against their sources.
- 2. Increasing the ratio of the strength of the signals to that of the noise by increasing the transmitter power and by using directional antennas.
  - 3. Improving the receivers.
- 4. Changing the form of the signals while keeping their power fixed. (This is done with the aim of facilitating the combating of noise in the receiver.)

The first two methods are not considered in this book, which is devoted rather to the last two methods, and has as its goal to examine whether it is possible to decrease the effect of noise by improving the receivors, given the existing kinds of signals. In particular, what can be achieved in combating noise by changing the form of the signals? What form of the signals is optimum for this purpose?

### 1-2. Classification of noise

We can classify the noise which impedes radio reception into the following categories:

A. Sinusoidal noise consisting of one or a finite number (usually small) of sinusoidal oscillations. This category of noise includes interference from the parasitic radiation of one or more radio stations operating at frequencies near that of the station being received.

B. Impulse noise consisting of separate impulses which follow one another at such large time intervals that the transients produced in the receivor by one impulse have substantially died out by the time the next impulse arrives. This category of noise includes some kinds of atmospheric noise and noise from electrical apparatus.

C. Normal fluctuation noise or, as it is sometimes called, smoothed-out noise.

This also consists of separate impulses, occurring at random time intervals, but the impulses follow one another so rapidly that the transients produced in the receiver by the individual impulses are superimposed in numbers large enough to warrant the application of the laws of large numbers of probability theory. This category of noise includes vacuum tube noise, noise due to the thermal motion of electrons in circuits, and some kinds of atmospheric noise and noise from electrical apparatus. At very high frequencies this kind of noise is encountered almost exclusively.

D. Impulse noise of an intermediate type, which occurs when the transients produced in the receiver by the individual impulses are superimposed, but not in numbers large enough to warrant the application with sufficient accuracy of the laws of large numbers. This kind of noise is intermediate between categories B and C.

Methods of studying the action of sinusoidal and impulse noise on radio recoivers are at present quite well developed. The study of impulse noise of the intermediate type, when the trensients produced by the individual impulses are just beginning to be superimposed, is much more difficult. Moreover, in this case, we need to know not only the shapes of the separate impulses, but also the probability of superposition of impulses which have various shapes, and which obey various time distributions. In most cases we do not have this information about the noise, and it seems to be quite difficult to obtain. For these reasons, and also because noise of category C is often encountered, in what follows we shall consider only noise of this latter category; we shall often designate normal fluctuation noise simply as noise.

### 1-3. Messages and signals

By a message we shall meen that which is to be transmitted. The messages with which

<sup>1.</sup> The use of the word "normal" alludes to the fact that we deal here with one of a variety of possible fluctuation processes.

we shall be concerned can be divided into three categories.

- A. Discrete messages.
- B. Mossages in the form of separate numbers (parameters), which can take on any values in certain ranges.
- C. Messages in the form of wave trains, which can assume a continuous infinity of different waveforms.

The messages which are transmitted in telegraphy belong to the category of discrete messages. In this case, they consist of discrete letters, numerals, and characters, which can take on a finite number of discrete values. Moreover, in many instances, the messages transmitted in remote-control systems belong to this category.

In the case of the transmission of individual measurements with the aid of telemetering, the messages consist of the values of certain parameters (e.g., temperature, pressure, etc.) measured at given time intervals. These quantities usually take on arbitrary values lying within certain ranges. Thus, in this case we cannot restrict ourselves to a finite number of possible discrete messages. Eessages of this kind belong to category B.

In the case of tolephony, the messages are acoustical vibrations, or the electrical wibrations taking place in the microphone, which can take on an infinite number of different forms. These messages belong to category C. In television, the oscillations acting on the transmitter can be taken as the message; this message also belongs to the last category.

We shall assume that some variation in voltage, produced by the operation of the transmitter, acts upon the receiver input. We have called this variation in voltage a signal. Clearly, there will be a signal corresponding to each possible transmitted message. The receiver must use this voltage waveform (i.e., signal) to reproduce the message to which the signal corresponds.

# 1-4. The contents of this book

In this book we consider the influence of normal fluctuation noise on the transmission of messages. The problem which will concern us is the following: We assume that when the

4

noise perturbation is not superimposed on the signal, then the receiver will reproduce the transmitted message exactly. If noise is added to the signal, then the sum of two voltages will act upon the receiver input, i.e., the signal voltage plus the noise voltage. In this case, depending on the sum voltage, the receiver will reproduce some message or other, which in a given instance may be different from the one that was transmitted. Clearly, each sum voltage which acts upon the receiver produces the particular message which corresponds to it. This correspondence may be different for different receivers. Depending on this correspondence, a receiver will be more or less subject to the influence of noise for a given kind of transmission. We shall find out what this correspondence ought to be for the message corruption to be the least possible. The receiver which has this optimum correspondence will be called ideal.

Next we shall determine the message porturbation which results when noise is added to the signals, and when the reception is with an ideal receiver; the message perturbation obtained in this way will be the least possible under the given conditions, i.e., for real receivers under the same conditions, the message perturbation cannot be less. The noise immunity characterized by this least possible message perturbation will be called the optimum noise immunity. This noise immunity can be approached in real receivers if the receiver is close to being ideal, but it cannot be exceeded. By comparing the optimum noise immunity with the noise inmunity conferred by real receivers, we can judge how close the latter are to perfection, and how much the noise immunity can be increased by improving them, i.e., to what extent it is advisable to work on further increasing the noise immunity for a given means of communication. Knowledge of the optimum noise immunity makes it easy to discover and reject methods of communication for which this noise immunity is low compared with other methods. This can be done without reference to the method of reception, since real receivers cannot achieve noise immunity greater than the optimum. By comparing the optimum noise immunity for different means of communication, we can easily explain (as will be seen subsequently) the basic factors on which the immunity depends, and thereby increase the immunity by changing the means of communication. In the book, these matters are illustrated by a whole series of examples which have practical interest. However,

the examples considered are far from exhausting all possible cases in which one can apply the methods of studying noise immunity developed here.

In the book, all questions are discussed in connection with radio reception, in the intorest of greator clarity; however, all that is said is directly applicable to other fields, like, for example, cable communication, acoustical and hydroacoustical signaling, etc. Foreover, in the book, all signal and noise disturbances are considered to be oscillations of voltago; however, nothing is changed if we consider instead escillations of current, acoustical pressure, or of any other quantity which characterizes the disturbance acting on the receiver.

This book does not consider certain irregular porturbations of the signals, which can strongly affect both the operation of radio receivers and their noise immunity. Examples of such perturbations are fading, echo phenomena, etc. Morcover, it should be kept in mind that in this book the word noise is henceforth (for brevity) understood to refer to normal fluctuation noise; indeed, this is the only kind of noise which will be considered.

### CHAPTER 2

# AUXILIARY MATHEMATICAL MATERIAL

### 2-1. Some definitions

We now introduce some definitions which simplify the subsequent analysis. We assume that all waveforms under consideration lie in the interval -T/2,+T/2, which is obviously always the case for sufficiently large T.

The mean value of a waveform A(t) over the interval T is designated by

The mean value of a waveform 
$$A(t)$$
 over the interval (2-1)
$$\frac{1}{A(t)} = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} A(t) dt$$

By the scalar product of two functions A(t) and B(t), we understand the mean value of their product over the interval -T/2, +T/2. Thus, the scalar product is

(2-2) 
$$\frac{1}{A(t)B(t)} = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} A(t)B(t) dt .$$

It is clear from the definition that

it is clear from the dollar-  
(2-3) 
$$\frac{A(t)B(t)}{A(t)A(t)} = \frac{B(t)A(t)}{B(t)A(t)}$$

Furthermore

Furthermore
$$A(t)[B(t) + C(t)] = A(t)B(t) + A(t)C(t)$$

and

and 
$$\overline{\left[ah(t)\right]\left[bB(t)\right]} = ab \overline{A(t)} B(t)$$

where a and b are arbitrary constants. Thus, the scalar product of functions has the same properties as the scalar product of vectors; instead of scalars we have constants, and instead of voctors we have functions.

7;

We write

(2-6) 
$$\frac{1}{A^{2}(t)} = \frac{1}{\Lambda(t)\Lambda(t)} = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} A^{2}(t) dt .$$

In what follows, we shall often encounter the quantity

In what follows, we shall 
$$\frac{+T/2}{T \Lambda^{2}(t)} = \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \Lambda^{2}(t) dt .$$

This quantity will be called the specific energy of the waveform A(t). It equals the energy expended in a resistance of 1 ohn acted upon by the voltage A(t). The quantity

$$\sqrt{h^2(t)}$$

will be called the effective value of the waveform A(t). A function with effective value is said to be normalized.

If two functions differ only by a constant, they are said to coincide in direction. The normalized function which coincides in direction with a given function A(t) is obviously

$$(2-9) \qquad \qquad \frac{A(t)}{\sqrt{A^2(t)}}$$

We shall say that the functions  $A_1(t)$ ,  $A_2(t)$ ,..., $A_n(t)$  are (mutually) orthogonal, if

$$(2-10) \qquad \qquad \overline{A_{\underline{i}}(t)A_{\underline{i}}(t)} = 0$$

for all 1 \li, 2 \li, n, except when i = 1.

# 2-2. Representation of a function as a linear combination of orthonormal functions

If the system of functions

(2-11) 
$$c_1(t), c_2(t), \dots, c_n(t)$$

satisfies the equations

(2-12) 
$$\frac{\overline{c_k^2(t)} = 1}{c_k^2(t)}$$

$$(2-13) \qquad \overline{c_k(t)c_k(t)} = 0.$$

where 1 & k, 2 & n and k / 2, we say that it is a system of orthonormal functions. An example of such a system of functions is the system

$$I_{0}(t) = 1 ,$$

$$I_{1}(t) = \sqrt{2} \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} t ,$$

$$I_{2}(t) = \sqrt{2} \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} t ,$$

$$I_{3}(t) = \sqrt{2} \sin 2 \frac{2\pi}{T} t ,$$

$$I_{4}(t) = \sqrt{2} \cos 2 \frac{2\pi}{T} t ,$$

$$I_{2m-1}(t) = \sqrt{2} \sin m \frac{2\pi}{T}t$$

$$I_{2m}(t) = \sqrt{2} \cos m \frac{2\pi}{T}t$$

since for this system the relations

since for this system the relations
$$\frac{1_{k}^{2}(t)}{1_{k}^{2}(t)} = 1, \quad I_{k}(t)I_{k}(t) = 0 \quad (k \neq 1)$$
(2-15)

are valid. We shall say that a function A(t) can be represented as a linear combination of a system of functions

of a system of lambda 
$$c_1(t), c_2(t), ..., c_n(t)$$
, (2-16)

if we can write

if we can write 
$$A(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k C_k(t) \qquad ,$$

where some of the a may vanish. If we assume that the functions (2-16) are orthonormal, then, taking the scalar product of both sides of Eq. (2-17) with Cp(t) and expanding, we obtain, with the use of Eqs. (2-12) and (2-13)

$$\frac{\Lambda(t)C_{\underline{q}}(t) = a_{\underline{q}}}{\Lambda(t)C_{\underline{q}}(t)}$$

We call the coefficients  $a_k$  the coordinates of the function k(t) in the system (2-16).

Obviously, the function A(t) is completely characterized by the n coordinates a<sub>1</sub>,...,a<sub>n</sub>, if the system (2-16) is specified. In particular, if we take as the system of orthonormal functions the system (2-14), we obtain

(2-19) 
$$\Lambda(t) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_{k} I_{k}(t) ,$$

where

(2-20) 
$$a_{\mathbf{\hat{q}}} = \overline{\Lambda(t)} I_{\mathbf{\hat{q}}}(t) .$$

The series (2-19) is the familiar expansion of the function  $\Lambda(t)$  as a Fourier series in the interval -T/2,+T/2. According to (2-14), the amplitude of the cosine term of frequency m/T is  $\sqrt{2}$  a<sub>2m</sub>, and the amplitude of the corresponding sine term is  $\sqrt{2}$  a<sub>2m-1</sub>.

If the oscillation  $\Lambda(t)$  is a signal, then we usually only consider a finite number of terms of the sum (2-19), with indices from  $\ell_1$  to  $\ell_2$ , say, since the components of the signal are as a rule so small outside a certain frequency range that they are masked by noise or by the components of other signals being transmitted on neighboring frequencies.

In this case (2-21) 
$$A(t) = \sum_{k=k_1}^{2} a_{k} I_{k}(t) .$$

Let  $a_1, \dots, a_n$  be the coordinates of the function A(t) in the system (2-6) and let  $b_1, \dots, b_n$  be the coordinates of the function B(t) in the same system. Then

$$\begin{array}{c} b_1, \dots, b_n \text{ be the coordinates of the function B(t) in the same system.} \\ \hline \\ (2-22) \\ \hline \\ A(t)B(t) = \\ \hline \\ \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k C_k(t) \\ \hline \\ k=1 \\ b_k C_k(t) \\ \hline \\ \end{array} = \\ \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k b_k \\ , \end{array}$$

which follows easily by expanding and using Eqs. (2-12) and (2-13). As a special case,

we have

If C(t) is a normalized function with coordinates c1,...,cn, then

(2-24) 
$$\sum_{k=1}^{n} c_{k}^{2} = 1 .$$

Furthermore, if the functions A(t) and B(t) are orthogonal, then according to the formula (2-22) and the orthogonality condition (2-10), we have

(2-25) 
$$\sum_{k=1}^{m} a_{k}b_{k} = \overline{\Lambda(t)B(t)} = 0 .$$

The expressions (2-22), (2-23), and (2-25) are the analogs of the corresponding expressions

9

of vector analysis.

Finally, we show that if two functions

$$A(t) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} a_{k} I_{k}(t) .$$

$$B(t) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} b_k I_k(t)$$

have no components with identical frequencies, i.e., if for all indices  $k \neq 0$ , either one of the  $a_k$  or one of the  $b_k$  is zero, then

(2-26) 
$$\overline{A(t)B(t)} = \overline{A(t)} \overline{B(t)}$$

Indeed, under these conditions

$$\overline{A(t)B(t)} = a_0b_0$$

and furthermore

$$\overline{A(t)} = B_0, \overline{B(t)} = b_0$$

whence Eq. (2-20) follows at once.

## 2-3. Normal fluctuation moise

We shall consider noise consisting of a large number of short pulses, randomly distributed in time. Such noise will be called <u>normal fluctuation noise</u>. This kind of noise includes thermal noise in conductors, shot noise in vacuum tubes, and, in many cases, atmospheric and man-made noise as well. Such a noise process can be represented by the expression

(2-27) 
$$\eta(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{n} F_k(t-t_k) .$$

where  $F_k(t-t_k)$  is the k'th pulse occurring in the interval -T/2,+T/2. We assume that the pulses are short and begin at the times  $t_k$ . Thus

pulses are short and boggs at 
$$F_k(t-t_k) = 0$$
 for  $t < t_k$  and  $t > t_k + \delta$ .

Here the pulses are to be numbered by the indices k not in the order of their occurrence in time, but (say) in order of decreasing amplitude.

Suppose that the probability of  $t_k$  falling in a subinterval of length dt is dt/T, and that it does not depend on the location of the subinterval within the interval -T/2,+T/2 nor on the other pulses. Moreover suppose that  $\overline{A(t)} = 0$ . Then we find that

(2-29) 
$$\frac{1}{W(t)A(t)} = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \sum_{k=1}^{n} F_{k}(t-t_{k}) A(t) dt = \sum_{k=1}^{n} \xi_{k}$$

where

where 
$$\xi_{k} = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} F_{k}^{(t-t_{k})} \Lambda(t) dt$$
.

Assuming that  $\delta$  is so small that A(t) changes negligibly in the time  $\delta$ , we obtain

where

where 
$$q_{k} = \int_{0}^{\delta} F_{k}(t) dt$$

is the area of the kith pulse.

The summands  $\xi_k$  are mutually independent random variables. If they are bounded, and if the sum of their variances increases without limit as the number of summands is increased, then, according to probability theory, we obtain in the limit of infinite n

(2-33) 
$$\lim_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sum_{k=1}^{n} \xi_{k} - \sum_{k=1}^{n} E \xi_{k}}{\sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^{n} D \xi_{k}}} = \theta_{A} .$$

where  $E \xi_k$  is the mean value, and  $D \xi_k = E(\xi_k - E \xi_k)^2$  is the variance of the quantity  $\xi_k$ ;  $\Theta_{\hat{\mathbf{A}}}$  is the random variable with distribution law

$$\theta_A$$
 is the random variable
$$P(x < \theta_A < x + dx) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-x^2/2} dx \qquad .$$

In what follows, random variables with the distribution law (2-34) will be called normal random variables.

It follows from (2-33) that for sufficiently large n we can write

(2-35) 
$$\frac{1 \cdot \operatorname{follows} \operatorname{From} \left( e^{-607} \right)}{\operatorname{II}(t) \operatorname{A}(t)} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} \xi_{k} = \theta_{A} \sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^{n} p \xi_{k}} + \sum_{k=1}^{n} \operatorname{E} \xi_{k} .$$

Moreover, by (2-31)

(2-36) 
$$E \xi_{k} = \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \frac{q_{k}}{T} \Lambda(t_{k}) \frac{dt_{k}}{T} = q_{k} \frac{\overline{\Lambda(t)}}{T} = 0 .$$

since by assumption  $\overline{A(t)} = 0$ . We have also

(2-37) 
$$D\xi_{k} = E(\xi_{k} - E\xi_{k})^{2} = \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \frac{q_{k}^{2}}{T} A^{2}(t_{k}) \frac{dt_{k}}{T} = \frac{q_{k}^{2}}{T^{2}} A^{2}(t)$$

whence

(2-38) 
$$\frac{1}{V(t)A(t)} = \frac{1}{T} \sqrt{\frac{2}{A^2(t)} \sum_{k=1}^{n} q_k^2} \theta_k \quad \bullet$$

We shall call the quantity

We shall call the quantity
$$\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{2\sum_{k=1}^{n} q_{k}^{2}}{T}}$$

the intensity of the process W(t). Thus we have

We note that since the sum  $\sum_{k=1}^{n} q_k^2$  is proportional to T, the quantity  $\sigma$  does not depend on T.

We now find  $\overline{V_i(t)B(t)}$ , assuming that

(2-41) 
$$B(t) = 0$$
 and  $A(t)B(t) = 0$ .

In a way analogous to the above, we obtain

$$(2-42) \qquad \overline{\forall (t)} \overline{B(t)} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} \chi_{k}$$

where

where 
$$\chi_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{\mathbf{B}(\mathbf{t_k})}{\mathbf{T}} \mathbf{q_k} \quad .$$

and
$$\frac{\sigma}{v(t)B(t)} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{2T}} \sqrt{\frac{B^2(t)}{B^2(t)}} \quad \Theta_B \quad .$$

Here  $\theta_{\rm B}$  is a normal random variable which, like  $\theta_{\rm A}$  , satisfies Eq. (2-34). As shown in probability theory,  $\sum\limits_{k=1}^n \xi_k$  and  $\sum\limits_{k=1}^n \chi_k$  are independent random variables in the limit

n -> oo, provided that\*

$$(2-45) E \xi_k \chi_k = 0.$$

Since we have

$$\mathbb{E} \, \overline{\xi}_k \chi_k = \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \frac{q_k^2}{T^2} \, \Lambda(t_k) B(t_k) \frac{dt_k}{T} =$$

(2-46)

$$= \frac{q_k^2}{T^2} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} A(t_k) B(t_k) dt_k = \frac{q_k^2}{T^2} \overline{A(t) B(t)} = 0.$$

it follows that the quantities  $\theta_A$  and  $\theta_B$  are independent. We note that this is the case and that Eqs. (2-40) and (2-44) are valid even when  $\overline{A(t)} \neq 0$  and  $\overline{B(t)} \neq 0$ , if we subtract from the process its mean, and if T is sufficiently large. This fact will not be proved here, since it is not needed for the subsequent analysis.

We have called the random variable  $\theta$  normal if the probability that it lies in the interval  $(x,x+\delta)$  is given by (2-34). It follows from this definition that the probability that  $\theta > x$  is given by

(2-47) 
$$P(\theta) \times P(\theta) \times P(\theta) \times P(\theta) \times P(\theta) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-z^2/2} dz = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-z^2/2} dz = V(x) \cdot P(\theta) \times $

The value of this integral can be found in tables. We have introduced the function V(x) because it will be very often encountered below. It is shown graphically in Figure 2-1. The probability that  $\theta(x)$ 

(2-48) 
$$P(\theta(x) = 1 - V(x) = V(-x) = 0$$

The mean value of 9 is

$$(2-49)$$
 F  $\theta = 0$ 

The mean value of  $\theta^2$  is

(2-50) 
$$p = E g^2 = 1$$

2-4. Representation of normal fluctuation noise as a Fourier series

The normal fluctuation noise introduced in Section 2-3 can be represented as  $\sharp$  The condition  $\mathsf{E}\,\xi_k\,\chi_k$ ,  $\mathsf{t}_k\,\not=\,\mathsf{t}_k$ , is also needed, which follows trivially from the independence of different pulses and the fact that  $\mathsf{K}(\mathsf{t})=\mathsf{d}(\mathsf{t})=0$ . (Translator)

14

the Fourier series

the Fourier series
$$V_{i}(t) = \sum_{\ell=1}^{\infty} w_{\ell} I_{\ell}(t)$$
(2-51)

(if we neglect the constant component), where

(2-52) 
$$v_{\ell} = \overline{v_{\ell}(t)} \frac{1}{\ell} \frac{1}{\ell} (t) .$$

If \$\omega\rightarrow{0}\$, but is not so large that the period of the harmonic is of the same order of magnitude as the length of the noise pulses, then according to (2-40)

$$(2-53) \qquad \qquad ^{\text{W}} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{2T}} \; \stackrel{\Theta}{\bullet} \; .$$

Thus, if we pick out from the noise the components with frequencies from  $f_{\mu}$  =  $\mu/T$  to  $f_{\gamma} = \sqrt[3]{r}$ , where  $\mu > 1$ , and  $\sqrt[3]{r}$  is not too large, then these components are

$$f_{3} = \sqrt[3]{r}, \text{ where } \mu \geqslant 1, \text{ and } v \neq 1$$

$$(2-54) \quad \forall \mu, \nu(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{2} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{kT}} I_{k}(t) \theta_{k} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{kT}} \sum_{k=2}^{2} \frac{1}{kT} I_{k}(t) \theta_{k} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{r}} \sum_{k=1}^{2} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{r}} I_{k}(t) \theta_{k} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{$$

where  $l_1^{-2\mu-1}$ ,  $l_2^{-2\lambda}$ . The quantities  $\theta_1$  figuring in this expression are constant on the interval -T/2,+T/2, but, as random variables, they can be different for different noise samples. It should also be noted that, according to Section 2-3, all the a are (mutually) independent, since all the  $I_{\widehat{\mathbf{Q}}}(t)$  are (mutually) orthogonal.

The process " (t) will be called normal fluctuation noise with constant intensity in the frequency range  $\mu/T$  to  $\sqrt[3]{T}$ . The mean square of this process over time T is,

according to (2-23) and (2-54)
$$\frac{11}{11} \frac{31}{2} \frac{31}{11} = \frac{\sigma^2}{2T} = \frac{1}{2} \frac$$

Averaging with respect to realizations of the process, we obtain for the square of the effective value the expression

effective value the expression
$$H^2 = \mathbb{E} \, \overline{v_{\mu, \nu}^2}(t) = \frac{\sigma^2}{2T} \qquad \sum_{k=2\mu-1}^{2} \mathbb{E} \, \theta_k^2$$

and, since  $E \theta_{\hat{\mathbf{g}}}^2 = 1$ , we have

(2-57) 
$$H^{2} = E \overline{v_{\mu, j}^{2}(t)} = \frac{\sigma^{2}}{2T} (2j - 2\mu) = \sigma^{2} (f_{j} - f_{\mu}) .$$

whence

whence 
$$\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{\frac{1}{2} \frac{2}{\mu_{\mu}, \nu(t)}}{f_{\nu} - f_{\mu}}} = \frac{H}{\sqrt{f_{\nu} - f_{\mu}}}$$

Thus,  $\sigma$  is the effective value of the process  $\ddot{u}_{\mu,\nu}(t)$ , referred to unit bandwidth.

We now show that if the waveforms  $\Lambda(t)$  and B(t) satisfy the condition

(2-59) 
$$\overline{A(t)} = 0$$
,  $\overline{B(t)} = 0$ ,  $\overline{A(t)B(t)} = 0$ ,

and can be represented as Fourier series which have no components with frequencies less than  $f_{\mu} = \mu/T$  and greater than  $f_{\nu} = \sqrt[3]{T}$ , then

than 
$$f_{\mu} = \mu/T$$
 and greater than  $f_{\nu} = \sqrt{T}$  and  $f_{\mu} = \mu/T$  and  $f_{\mu} = \mu$ 

(2-61) 
$$\frac{\overline{u}_{\mu,\nu}(t)\overline{B}(t)}{\sqrt{2T}} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{2T}} \sqrt{\overline{B^2}(t)} \cdot \Theta_{B} .$$

where  $heta_{ ext{A}}$  and  $heta_{ ext{B}}$  are independent normal random variables. Indeed, the process (2-51) can be written as

tok oleh sekatan mengen sekatan terbah sekatan di kelanjak kelanjak di kelanjak di kelangan di kelangan di kel

where

where 
$$(2-63)$$
  $w(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{2\mu-2} w_k I_k(t)$ ,

Then, by hypothesis, W'(t) and W''(t) have no components with frequencies coinciding with the frequencies of the components of the oscillations i(t) and B(t). Therefore

(2-65) 
$$\frac{\overline{\psi}(t)A(t)}{\overline{\psi}(t)B(t)} = 0, \quad \frac{\overline{\psi}(t)A(t)}{\overline{\psi}(t)B(t)} = 0,$$

whence, multiplying both sides of (2-62) by A(t) and B(t) and taking the scalar product, we obtain the expressions (2-60) and (2-61), with the help of Eqs. (2-40) and (2-44).

For simplicity, we shall often consider the random function

(2-66) 
$$\Theta(t) = \sum_{\frac{1}{2}=2\mu-1}^{\ell_2} \theta_{\ell_1} I_{\ell_1}(t) = \sum_{\frac{1}{2}=1}^{n} \theta_{\ell_1}^{\prime} I_{\ell_1}^{\prime}(t)$$

which differs from the process  $W_{\mu,\nu}(t)$  by the constant factor  $\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{2T}}$  . Here we have written

(2-67) 
$$\theta_{1}^{i} = \theta_{1+2\mu-2}^{i}, I_{1}^{i}(t) = I_{1+2\mu-2}(t), n = 2\sqrt{-(2\mu-2)}.$$

According to (2-60), we have

According to (2-60), we have
$$\frac{\Theta(t)h(t)}{\Theta(t)h(t)} = \sqrt{\frac{2}{A^2(t)}} \Theta_A$$

since  $u_{\mu,\lambda}(t)$  equals  $\Theta(t)$  if  $\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{2\tau}} = 1$ .

2-5. Linear functions of independent normal random variables

We shall now find the linear function

of the independent normal random variables  $\theta_{\mu}$  , where the  $a_{\mu}$  are arbitrary constants\*.

Yie sot

We sot 
$$(2-70)$$
  $f(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_{k} I_{k}(t)$ .

(2-71) 
$$\Theta(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{n} \theta_{k} I_{k}(t)$$
.

Then, according to (2-22)

Then, according to (2-72)
$$\frac{n}{A(t)\Theta(t)} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i \Theta_i .$$

On the other hand, by (2-68) and (2-23)

(2-73) 
$$\frac{1}{A(t)\Theta(t)} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{\Lambda^2(t)}} \theta_{\Lambda} = \sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k^2} \theta_{\Lambda}.$$

whence<sup>42</sup>

$$\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_{k} \theta_{k} = \sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_{k}^{2}} \theta_{k} .$$

<sup>\*</sup> Although the independent normal random variables to can be quite general, the author evidently has in mind the random variables denoted by a in the preceding section.

<sup>\*\*</sup>A simpler proof follows at once from the observation that (2-59) is a normal random variable (being a linear combination of independent normal random variables), and that its mean is zero and its variance  $\sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i^2$  (by inspection). (Translator)

Analogously, we have

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} b_{i} \theta_{i} = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{n} b_{i}^{2}} \theta_{i} .$$

Moreover, if

$$\sum_{R=1}^{n} a_R b_R = 0 ,$$

then  $\theta_{A}$  and  $\theta_{B}$  are independent normal rendom variables; for, writing

$$B(t) = \sum_{n=1}^{n} b_{n} I_{n}(t)$$
,

we find (as above)

$$\frac{1}{B(t)\Theta(t)} = \sum_{A=1}^{n} b_{A} \theta_{A} = \sqrt{\sum_{A=1}^{n} b_{A}^{2}} \theta_{B} \quad .$$

where, according to (2-76) and (2-22),  $\overline{A(t)B(t)} = 0$ , and therefore, by (2-60) and (2-61),  $\Theta_A$  and  $\Theta_B$  are independent\*.

2-6. The probability that normal fluctuation noise falls in a given region

We shall say that a function <u>lies in a given region</u> if its coordinates satisfy the conditions that define the region. We now find the probability that the function (2-66) lies in the elementary region defined by the conditions

$$\begin{array}{c} y_1 < \theta_1' < y_1^{+d}y_1 \\ \\ y_n < \theta_n' < y_n^{+d}y_n \end{array} .$$

Since the of figuring in these inequalities are independent random variables which ratisfy the conditions (2-34), the probability that all the inequalities (2-78) are simultaneously satisfied is

Esimultaneously satisfactors 
$$(2-79) \quad P(2-78) = \frac{dy_1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp(-y_1^2/2) \frac{dy_2}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp(-y_2^2/2) \cdots \frac{dy_n}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp(-y_n^2/2) =$$

$$= \frac{dy_1 dy_2 \cdots dy_n}{(2\pi)^{n/2}} \exp(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^{n} y_k^2)$$

The probability that the function  $\Theta$ (t) will lie in some region, say the region R, which can be divided up into elementary regions of the type (2-72), is obviously equal to the \*A simpler proof follows at once from the observation that  $\alpha = \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k \theta_k$  and  $\beta = \sum_{k=1}^{n} b_k \theta_k$  are jointly normal random variables, and that  $\Xi \alpha_k^{\alpha} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k b_k$ , so that according to (2-76),  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are uncorrelated, and hence independent. (Translator)

CONTRACTOR CONTRACTOR STATES

sum of the probabilities that the function will fall in one of the elementary regions into which the region R is subdivided. Since the elementary regions are infinitely small, this sum reduces to the integral

(2-80) 
$$P(\Theta(t) \text{ in } R) = \int \int \dots \int \frac{dy_1 dy_2 \dots dy_n}{(2\pi)^{n/2}} \exp(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^n y_i^2)$$

which is to be taken over the values  $y_1, \dots, y_n$  belonging to R.

In the case where the region R is so small that  $\sum_{i=1}^{n} y_i^2$  can be regarded as constant in integrating over the region, then the exponential can be taken out from behind the integral sign, and we obtain

integral sign, and we obtain
$$P(\Theta(t) \text{ in } R) = (2\pi)^{-n/2} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{n} y_i^2\right) \Delta V,$$

where

where 
$$\Delta V = \int \int \dots \int dy_1 dy_2 \dots dy_n$$
 (2-82)

Using the terminology of three-dimensional space, we shall call the quantity AV the volume of the region R.

If a function

(2-83) 
$$Y(t) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} y_i I_i^{i}(t)$$

lies in the region R, then the coordinates of the function can be put into the formula

(2-84) 
$$\frac{y^2(t)}{y^2(t)} = \sum_{i=1}^n y_i^2 .$$

so that

so that
$$P(\Theta(t) \text{ in } R) = \frac{\Delta V}{(2\pi)^{n/2}} \exp(-\frac{1}{2} \overline{Y^{2}(t)})$$

We can draw the following conclusion from this formula. The probability that the random function  $\Theta(t)$  defined by Eq.(2-66) lies in a small region in which the function Y(t) also lies, is proportional to the volume of the region, and depends in addition only on the effective value of the function Y(t), decreasing as the effective value increases. By a small region we mean here a region such that the effective value of all functions lying in it can be regarded as the same in calculating the integral (2-80).

# 2-7. Geometric interpretation of our results

The results obtained in this chapter, as well as the results which we shall obtain below, can be interpreted by using the geometry of n-dimensional space. Although it is not very easy to visualizo n-dimensional space, still such an interpretation has many advantages, especially for those who are inclined to think in geometric terms. The point is that relations which are valid for any n-dimensional space are valid in particular for the special cases of two and three-dimensional space. This allows one to guess and verify general properties of spaces with many dimensions with the aid of the descriptive models of ordinary geometry. Moreover, the use of terminology and models borrowed from the goometry of three-dimensional space allows one to more easily keep in mind the results which

We have agreed to deal with functions in an interval T and with frequencies lying in have been obtained. certain bands. In this case, the functions being considered can be represented in the form

$$A(t) = \sum_{R=2\mu-1}^{2\nu} a_R I_R(t)$$
.

where the  $I_{\uparrow}(t)$  are specified functions given by Eq.(2-14). Thus, any function under consideration is completely determined by  $n=2\vartheta-2\mu$  quantities  $a_{\mbox{\scriptsize $\mu$}}$  . We can represent this function conventionally either by a radius vector in n-dimensional space, the terminal point of which has coordinates  $a_{2\mu-1}$ ,  $a_{2\mu}$ ,  $a_{2\mu}$ , or by the terminal point itself. Such a vector will be called the vector corresponding to the function A(t) or briefly the voctor of the function A(t). In the case n = 2, this representation is especially graphic.

The function Ig(t) has all coordinates equal to zero except the coordinate with index Q, which equals one. Thus, the radius vector corresponding to I (t) lies on the axis indexed by Q , and has unit length.

It is not hard to see that the vector of a sum of functions equals the sum of the vectors of the individual functions. The vector of the difference of two functions is the difference of the vectors of the individual functions. According to the definitions of Section 2-1, the scalar product of two functions equals the scalar product of the vectors corresponding to them, as follows from Eq. (2-22). Thus, addition, subtraction, and

scaler multiplication of functions can be replaced by addition, subtraction, and multiplication of their vectors. Furthermore, orthogonal functions correspond to orthogonal vectors, and functions which coincide in circetion correspond to vectors which coincide

The magnitude of the effective value of a function, the square of which is given by the expression (2-23), equals the length of the vector corresponding to the function. Accordingly, the square of the distance between the points which correspond to the functions A(t) and B(t) equals  $\overline{(A(t)-B(t))^2}$ . A unit vector corresponds to a normalized function. A system of orthonormal vectors corresponds to a system of orthonormal functions. The notion of the volume of a region, introduced in Eq. (2-82) of Section 2-6, corresponds to volume in the space in which we construct the vectors.

To the random function  $\mathfrak{D}(t)$  defined by  $\mathfrak{Pq}$ . (2-66) there corresponds a random radius vector. The probability that the end of this vector falls in some small volume  $\Delta V$  is given by Eq. (2-65). As is evident from the formula, this probability is proportional to the volume  $\Delta V$ , and depends also on the distance of the volume from the origin of coordinates. This distance is equal to the quantity  $\sqrt{Y^2(t)}$ . It follows from Eq. (2-68) that the projection on any direction of the vector corresponding to  $\mathfrak{P}(t)$  is equal to the scalar product of the unit vector coinciding with the given direction and the vector corresponding to  $\mathfrak{P}(t)$ , and is always a normal random variable. The projections of the vector corresponding to  $\mathfrak{P}(t)$ , on orthogonal directions are mutually independent normal random variables. Everything which has been said here about the vector corresponding to the random waveform  $\mathfrak{P}(t)$  can be carried over to the vector corresponding to the noise the random waveform  $\mathfrak{P}(t)$  can be carried over to the vector corresponding to the noise waveform  $\mathfrak{P}(t)$ , since these waveforms differ only by a constant factor.

21

### PART II

# TRANSMISSION OF DISCRETE MESSAGES

### CHAPTER 3

THE IDEAL RECEIVER FOR DISCRETE SIGNALS

# 3-1. Discrete mossages and signals

In this part we shall consider the transmission of discrete messages, i.e., of messages which can have a finite number of completely specified versions; we shall also coneider the effect of noise on the transmission of such messages. As already mentioned, the category of transmission of discrete messages includes telegraphy, remote-control when there is provision for a finite number of distinct commands, various kinds of signalling, etc. We shall use the example of telegraphy to make more precise what we mean by a message. As already noted, in general by a message we mean that which is to be transmitted. Thus, we shall designate as a message an entire telegram, the separate words of which it consists, and the separate symbols of which the words consist. It is also possible to call a message the voltage waveform which corresponds to the transmitted word or symbol, and which is produced by the telegraph transmitter, to be transmitted to the telegraph receiver. This voltage waveform usually consists of individual smaller units, which follow one another in sequence. For example, when the five-symbol telegraph code is used, the voltage waveform corresponding to one symbol consists of five units. We can also regard each of these units as a message. Thus, we can mean by a message both the text of the telegram and the elements which go to make it up, as well as the voltage waveforms produced by the telegraph transmitter and their elements. A message can be complex and can consist of a series of simpler messages which follow one another in sequence. For simplicity, we shall assume that in the case where the telegraph transmitter sends nothing, a message is sent to the effect that the telegraph receiver should print nothing. The receiver has to reproduce the transmitted message. Therefore, in the case where we take as the message the separate symbols, words, or telegrams, the telegraph printer must be included as a component of the receiver.

Suppose the system in question provides for the transmission of messages which can

take on m values. We assume that to each value of the message corresponds a definite signal (1.0., weweform) which acts upon the receiver when the message is transmitted in the absence of moise. We designate these m values of the signal by

$$\lambda_1(t), \lambda_2(t), \dots, \lambda_m(t)$$

In particular, one of these signals can be zero. Using Eq. (2-21), we can represent these

Suppose noise is added to these signed waveforms. We assume that for all frequencies involved in the sum the intensity of the noise is the same and equals e. In this case, when the signal A(t) is transmitted, the sum veltage acting on the receiver is

(5-3) 
$$\chi(t) = \sum_{p=p_1}^{p_2} \chi_{p^{T}} p^{(t)} = \pi_{\mu, J}(t) + \Lambda_{k}(t)$$

where  $\eta_{\mu\nu}$  (t) is the noise waveform defined by  $\Theta_{1a}$  (2-54). In this expression, we sum over all frequencies to which the receiver can respond. Using Eqs. (3-2), (3-3) and (2-51), we obtain

$$(3-4) \qquad \qquad x_{1} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{2T}} \theta_{1} + n_{1} e^{-\frac{1}{2}}$$

The waveform X(t) acting on the receiver is completely characterized by the coordinates 

# 3-2. The ideal receiver

To shall assume that, depending on the waveform which acts upon it, the receiver always reproduces one of the possible messages. It is clear that for every receiver we can pick out from all possible values of X(t) (i.o., all possible values of the set x 0, x 1+1 ...., x 0) the domain of walues for which the receiver will reproduce the measure corresponding to the signal A1(t). We shall call this domain the domain of the signal A1(t). Then, in just the same way, we can pick out the domain of values for which the mossage corresponding to the signal  $\Lambda_2(t)$  will be reproduced. We call this domain the domain of the signal A2(t), and so forth. It is clear that in this fashion the whole

domain of possible values of X(t) will be divided into m non-everlapping subdomains.

Suppose the signal  $\Lambda_{\mathbf{k}}(t)$  was sent. In this case, the waveform  $\mathbf{X}(t)$  which arrives at the receiver in the presence of noise is characterized by the coordinates (3-4), which in general can take on arbitrary values, since the  $\theta_{L}$  are (mutually) independent normal random variables. Then there is a finite probability that the waveform X(t) will fall in any domain. Assume that it falls in the domain  $A_i(t)$ , where  $i \neq k$ . Then the receiver will incorrectly reproduce the message corresponding to the signal A<sub>i</sub>(t) instead of the message corresponding to the signal  $A_{\mathbf{k}}(t)$ . It is clear that the number of correctly reproduced messages depends on the configuration of the domains defined by the receiver. We shall be concerned with the problem of selecting the domains of values of the waveforms X(t), for given signals (3-1), in such a way as to make the number of incorrectly reproduced messages as small as possible, or, what amounts to the same thing, in such a way as to make the probability of correctly reproduced messages as large as possible. The receiver which is characterized by such domains, and which therefore gives the minimum number of incorrectly received messages, will be called ideal. To determine the configuration of the domains which characterize the ideal receiver, we introduce the following notation:

 $P(A_k)$  is the <u>a priori</u> probability that the signal  $A_k$  is sent.

 $P_{\mathbf{A_k}}(\mathbf{X})$  is the conditional probability that the waveform  $\mathbf{X}(\mathbf{t})$  with coordinates

(3-5) 
$$y_{\ell_1} \langle x_{\ell_1} \langle y_{\ell_1} + dy_{\ell_1}, \dots, y_{\ell_2} \langle x_{\ell_2} \langle y_{\ell_2} + dy_{\ell_2}$$

will be received, if it is known that the signal  $A_{\mathbf{k}}(t)$  was sent.

 $P_{\chi}(A_k)$  is the conditional probability that the signal  $A_k(t)$  was sent, if we know that the received waveform is X(t), i.e., that it corresponds to the inequalities (3-5).

P(X) = 
$$\sum_{k=1}^{m} P(A_k) P_{A_k}(X)$$
 is the probability that the received signal is X(t).

With this notation, the joint probability that the signal  $A_k(t)$  is sent and that the waveform X(t) is received is given by

waveform X(t) is received 12 b  

$$P(A_k)P_{A_k}(X) = P(X)P_X(A_k) ,$$
(3-6)

whence
$$P_{\chi}(A_{k}) = \frac{P(A_{k})P_{A_{k}}(X)}{P(X)} = \frac{P(A_{k})P_{A_{k}}(X)}{\sum_{k=1}^{m} P(A_{k})P_{A_{k}}(X)}$$

If, when the waveform X(t) is received, the receiver reproduces the message corresponding to the signal  $A_k(t)$ , then the probability of there being correct reproduction when X(t) is received is obviously  $P_X(A_k)$ . Similarly, if, when the waveform X(t) is received, the receiver reproduces the message corresponding to the waveform A(t), then the probability of correct reproduction is  $P_X(A_k)$ . Thus, to obtain the maximum probability of correct signal reproduction, when X(t) is received, the receiver should reproduce the message which corresponds to the signal for which the quantity  $P_X(A_k)$  is largest; in other words, the receiver should be constructed in such a way as to make X(t) belong to the domain of the signal  $A_k(t)$  for which  $P_X(A_k)$  is the largest. This receiver will guarantee the maximum probability of correct message reproduction. No other receiver can increase this probability.

According to (3-7), when the waveform X(t) is received, the ideal receiver should reproduce the message corresponding to the signal which gives the largest value of the expression

$$(3-8)$$
  $P(A_k)P_{A_k}(X)$  •

The quantity  $P(A_k)$  in this expression has to be furnished; it is determined by the character of the transmitted messages. The quantity  $P_{A_k}(X)$  is by definition the probability that the noise assumes a value which when added to the signal  $A_k(t)$  gives the waveform X(t) satisfying the relations (3-5). It follows from Eq. (3-4) that this probability is the probability that the  $\theta_k$  satisfy the inequalities

According to Section 2-6 and Eqs. (2-78) and (2-79), the latter probability is

$$P_{A_{k}}(X) = (2T/\sigma^{2})^{n/2} \frac{dy_{\hat{k}_{1}} \cdots dy_{\hat{k}_{2}}}{(2\pi)^{n/2}} \exp \left[ -\frac{T}{\sigma^{2}} \sum_{f=\hat{k}_{1}}^{\hat{k}_{2}} (y_{f} - a_{k}f)^{2} \right]$$

where  $n = l_2 - l_1 + 1$ . Moreover, for infinitely small  $dy_{l_1}, \dots, dy_{l_2}$ , we have  $\sum_{k=1}^{2} (y_{k} - a_{k})^{2} = \sum_{k=1}^{2} (x_{k} - a_{k})^{2} = \overline{(x(t) - A_{k}(t)^{2})}.$ 

whence it follows that

whence it follows that
$$P(A_k)P_{A_k}(X) = \frac{1}{(\pi/T)^{n/2}\sigma^n} \exp\left[-\frac{T}{\sigma^2} \frac{\overline{(X(t)-A_k(t))^2} + \ln P(A_k)}{\overline{(X(t)-A_k(t))^2} + \ln P(A_k)}\right]$$

where the larger the value of the exponent, the smaller the value of (3-10). Thus we obtain the largest probability of correct message reproduction if we choose the receiver in such a way as to make X(t) belong to the domain of the signal for which the  $T = \frac{T/2}{(X(t)-A_k(t))^2} - \sigma^2 \ln P(A_k) = \int_{-\infty}^{+T/2} \frac{T}{(X(t)-A_k(t))^2} dt - \sigma^2 \ln P(A_k)$ quantity (3-11)

## has the smallest value.

# 3-3. Geometric interpretation of the material of chapter 3

As we have already remarked, every waveform of finite length and with a finite frequency spectrum can be represented as a point or radius vector in n-space. Thus, each of the m signals considered in this chapter can be represented by its own point or radius vector. If to the transmitted signal is added a noise waveform with a vector which can have an arbitrary direction and arbitrary length, then the resulting received waveform X(t) will also be characterized by a point in n-space, which most often will not coincide with any of the points corresponding to signals. Depending on the position of this point, the receiver will reproduce some message or other. If we combine all the points of our space which correspond to received waveforms for which the receiver reproduces the message corresponding to the signal  $\mathbb{A}_{k}(t)$ , we obtain the region of space which we called the domain of the signal  $A_k(t)$ . Since we assumed that when a waveform is received, one of the possible messages has to be reproduced, then every point of space has to fall in the domain

<sup>\*</sup> In fact with probability one (for normal fluctuation noise). (Translator)

of some signal. We saw how these domains should be chosen for the ideal receiver. In the simplest case, when all the signals are equiprobable (i.e., when all the  $P(A_k)$  are equal), the domain of the signal  $A_k(t)$  should consist of points of the space which lie closer to the point  $A_k(t)$  than to any other point representing a signal, i.e., points for which

$$\overline{(x(t)-\Lambda_{\mathbf{k}}(t))^{2}} \langle \overline{(x(t)-\Lambda_{\mathbf{k}}(t))^{2}}$$

where  $A_{\ell}(t)$  is any of the possible signals which differs from  $A_{k}(t)$ . This is natural, since the smaller the length of the noise vector, the larger the probability of the noise, and therefore it is most likely that the given received waveform was formed by the addition of the noise vector to the end of the nearest signal vector.

### CHAPTER 4

NOISE IMMUNITY FOR SIGNALS WITH TWO DISCRETE VALUES

## 4-1. Probability of error for the ideal receiver

because of the perturbation of the signal waveform by the added noise. We now find the probability of such incorrect reproduction, or, as we say, the probability of error.

This probability characterizes the noise immunity for reception with the ideal receiver, i.e., the optimum noise immunity for the given kind of signals. The probability of error for reception with a real receiver can attain this value, but cannot be less than it.

In this chapter we consider noise immunity for signals which can take on only two values  $A_1(t)$  and  $A_2(t)$ . This case is of great practical interest, since discrete signals often consist of sequences of elementary signals, each of which can have only two values. According to what was said in Section 3-2, in this case the ideal receiver should reproduce the message corresponding to the signal  $A_1(t)$  if

(4-1) 
$$\frac{1}{T(X(t)-A_1(t))^2} - \sigma^2 \ln P(A_1) \langle T(X(t)-A_2(t))^2 - \sigma^2 \ln P(A_2) \rangle$$

and otherwise the message corresponding to the signal A2(t).

Suppose the signal  $A_1(t)$  was sent. We now find the probability that the noise assumes a value such that the ideal receiver reproduces the message corresponding to

the signal  $A_2(t)$ . This probability equals the probability that the inequality (4-1) is not satisfied when we substitute into it the quantity

$$X(t) = A_1(t) + \pi_{u,v}(t) .$$

i.e., the probability that the inequality

$$\overline{T \frac{1}{W_{\mu,\nu}^2(t) - \sigma^2 \ln P(A_1)}} \xrightarrow{T \left(W_{\mu,\nu}^2(t) + A_1(t) - A_2(t)\right)^2} - \sigma^2 \ln P(A_2)$$

is satisfied. Expanding this expression according to the rules introduced in Section 2-1, we obtain

$$T \overline{v_{\mu,\nu}^{2}(t)} - \sigma^{2} \ln P(\Lambda_{1}) > T \overline{v_{\mu,\nu}^{2}(t)} + 2T \overline{v_{\mu,\nu}(t)(\Lambda_{1}(t) - \Lambda_{2}(t))} + T \overline{(\Lambda_{1}(t) - \Lambda_{2}(t))^{2}} - \sigma^{2} \ln P(\Lambda_{2}) .$$

whence it follows by Eq. (2-60) that

$$-\sigma^{2} \ln P(A_{1}) > \sigma \sqrt{2T} \sqrt{(A_{1}(t)-A_{2}(t))^{2}} \quad \theta + T \overline{(A_{1}(t)-A_{2}(t))^{2}} - \sigma^{2} \ln P(A_{2}) .$$

or

$$\theta \leqslant \frac{1}{2} \ln \frac{P(\Lambda_2)}{P(\Lambda_1)} \frac{\sqrt{\overline{Z}} \sigma}{\sqrt{\overline{\Gamma(\Lambda_1(t) - \Lambda_2(t))^2}}} - \frac{\sqrt{\overline{T(\Lambda_1(t) - \Lambda_2(t))^2}}}{\sqrt{\overline{Z}} \sigma}$$

The probability of this inequality can be determined from Eq. (2-48). Thus, the probability that as a result of the addition of fluctuation noise to the signal  $A_1(t)$ , the ideal receiver reproduces the incorrect message corresponding to the signal  $A_2(t)$ , equals

(4-2) 
$$P(A_2 \text{ instead of } A_1) = V(\alpha_{21})$$

where we have introduced the notation

(4-3) 
$$\alpha_{21} = \alpha + \frac{1}{2\alpha} \ln \frac{P(\Lambda_1)}{P(\Lambda_2)}$$

$$\alpha^2 = \frac{\sqrt{\frac{T(\Lambda_1(t) - \Lambda_2(t))^2}{\sqrt{2} \sigma}}}{\sqrt{2} \sigma} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2\sigma^2} & \int_{-T/2}^{(\Lambda_1(t) - \Lambda_2(t))^2} dt \end{bmatrix}^{1/2}$$

and V is given by Figure 2-1.

In just the same way, the probability that the receiver will incorrectly interpret the transmitted signal  $A_2(t)$  as  $A_1(t)$  is found to be

(4-5) 
$$P(A_1 \text{ instead of } A_2) = V(a_{12}) .$$

where
$$\alpha_{12} = \alpha + \frac{1}{2\alpha} \ln \frac{P(A_2)}{P(A_1)}$$

It follows that in the case of two signals the probability of error for the ideal receiver is

$$\frac{\text{resolver } 1}{(4-7)} \qquad \qquad P_{E} = P(A_{1})V(\alpha_{21}) + P(A_{2})V(\alpha_{12}) \qquad .$$

As is apparent from these formulas, the protability of error, which determines the optimum noise immunity, depends on two factors --- on the ratio  $P(A_1)/P(A_2)$ , and on

$$a^{2} = \frac{T (\Lambda_{1}(t) - \Lambda_{2}(t))^{2}}{2\sigma^{2}} = \frac{1}{2\sigma^{2}} \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} (\Lambda_{1}(t) - \Lambda_{2}(t))^{2} dt .$$

The first factor depends exclusively on the transmitted messages. The second factor & depends on the ratio of the specific energy of the signal difference to  $\sigma^2$ , the square of the noise intensity. The larger this ratio, the smaller the probability of error, and the larger the optimum noise immunity. In this factor, for a given noise intensity, we can change only the specific energy of the signal difference. Systems for which this energy is the largest afford the best noise immunity, provided that the receivers are sufficiently good.

In geometric terms, both a and the optimum noise immunity are determined by the distance  $\sqrt{(A_1(t)-A_2(t))^2}$  between the points representing the signal, and become larger when this distance increases. We note also that the probability of error does not depend on the expansion interval T, since by hypothesis this expansion interval can be taken large enough to have the signal entirely contained within the interval (-T/2,+T/2). It also does not depend on the limits of the frequency summation , provided they include all frequencies contained in the signals. The probability of error is connected with the mean number of incorrectly received messages by the following relation: the number of incorrectly received messages is on the sverage equal to N PE, where N is the number of transmitted signals.

4-2. Influence of the ratio P(A1)/P(A2)

If the probability of transmission is the same for both signals (i.e.,  $P(A_1)=P(A_2)=\frac{1}{4}$ ),

<sup>\*</sup> I.e., as contained in Wu, (t). (Translator)

$$P_{\mathbf{E}} = V(\mathbf{a})$$

In the case where the noise intensity  $\sigma$  is small, so that  $\alpha$ ?)1, the second term in the expressions for  $\alpha_{21}$  and  $\alpha_{12}$  can be neglected, and since  $F(A_1) + F(A_2) = 1$ , in this case also Eq. (4-7) reduces to Eq. (4-8). In Figure 4-1, curve 1 gives the dependence of Pg on a for the case  $P(\Lambda_1)/P(\Lambda_2) = 1$ , and curve 2 gives the same dependence for the case  $P(A_1)/P(A_2) = 10$  or 0.1. These curves were obtained from Eqs. (4-8) and (4-7), respectively. As is evident from these curves, and also from an analysis of the formulas, P gets smaller as  $P(h_1)/P(h_2)$  differs more from unity. In the limit  $P(h_1)/P(h_2) = \infty$  or 0, we obtain  $P_E^{-}$  = 0, irrespective of a. This result is obvious, since in this case the transmitted signal is known in advance.

In the case  $P(\Lambda_1) = P(\Lambda_2)$ , the domains which the ideal receiver assigns to the signals  $A_1(t)$  and  $A_2(t)$  do not depend on the noise intensity  $\sigma_s$  as follows from Section 4-1. In the case  $P(A_1) \neq P(A_2)$ , they must depend on  $\sigma_*$  This means that the regime of the ideal receiver has to change with  $\sigma_s$  which in many cases may be inconvenient. Let us see how much the probability of incorrect signal reproduction increases if the signal domains (i.e., the receiver regime) are taken for the case where  $P(h_1) = P(A_2)$ , or, what amounts to the same thing, for the case of small o, and are not changed in the case where  $P(A_1) \neq P(A_2)$  and  $\sigma$  is large. For the case where  $P(A_1) = P(A_2)$  or  $\sigma$  is small, according to (3-11), the receiver domains are chosen so that the received waveform X(t) falls in the domain of the signal A1(t) if

$$(\overline{x(t)-\Lambda_1(t))^2} < (\overline{x(t)-\Lambda_2(t))^2}$$

If we repeat the considerations of Section 4-1 for this case, we obtain

$$F(\Lambda_2 \text{ instead of } \Lambda_1) = V(\alpha)$$

where a is defined by Eq. (4-1). In complete analogy, we have

$$P(A_1 \text{ instead of } A_2) = V(\alpha)$$
.

whence the probability of error in this case equals

whence the probability of error in this cost 
$$(4-9)$$
  $P_E = P(A_1)P(A_2 \text{ instead of } A_1) + P(A_2)P(A_1 \text{ instead of } A_2) = V(\alpha)$ ,  $(4-9)$   $P_E = P(A_1)P(A_2 \text{ instead of } A_2) + P(A_2)P(A_1 \text{ instead of } A_2) = V(\alpha)$ ,  $(4-9)$ 



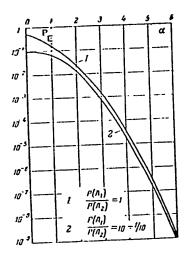
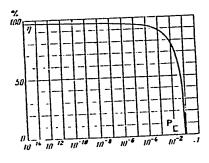


Fig. 4-1. Probability of error for the ideal receiver. Curve 1 is for  $P(A_1)/P(A_2) = 1$ ; curve 2 is for  $P(A_1)/P(A_2) = 10$  or 0.1; is defined by Eq.(4-4).

Fig. 4-2. Dependence of the efficiency coefficient on the probability of error for  $P(A_1)/P(A_2) = 10$  or 0.1, and for the receiver which is ideal for  $P(A_1)/P(A_2) = 1$ .



since  $P(A_1) + P(A_2) = 1$ . Thus, this probability does not depend on the ratio  $P(A_1)/P(A_2)$ , and equals the probability of error for reception with the ideal receiver in the case  $P(A_1)/P(A_2) = 1^*$ .

Now consider the case  $P(h_1)/P(h_2) = 10$  or 0.1. Then, the probability of error for reception with an ideal receiver, specially constructed for this case, is given by curve 2 of Figure 4-1. On the other hand, the probability of error for reception with the receiver just considered is given by curve 1 of the same figure. As is evident from the figure, for small a the difference between the two curves can be quite substantial, and in this case it is desirable to take into account the unequal probabilities of signal transmission. For operation in the region of small  $\sigma$  (i.e., large  $\sigma$ ) the difference is small.

To characterize how much a given receiver approaches the ideal receiver in noise immunity, we introduce the concept of the <u>efficiency coefficient</u> of a receiver, which we designate by  $\eta$ . By this coefficient we mean the ratio of the signal power for the ideal receiver to the signal power for some other receiver under consideration, provided that the probability of error and the form of the signals are the same in both cases. Thus, this coefficient shows how much the energy (strength) of the signals can be decreased, if we use the ideal receiver instead of the given receiver, while keeping fixed the probability of correct message reproduction. For the case just considered, this coefficient is equal to the square of the ratio of the abcissas of the curves 1 and 2 for the same value of  $P_E$ . The dependence of  $\eta$  on  $P_E$  which is obtained in this way is shown in Figure 4-2. As we see from this figure, for conditions such that  $P_E < 10^{-3}$ , and such conditions are common, we can take  $\eta > 0.9$ .

# 4-3. Optimum noise immunity for transmission with a passive space

In the case where the signal waveform can have only two values  $A_1(t)$  and  $A_2(t)$ , and one of them, say  $A_2(t)$ , is identically zero, the transmission is called <u>transmission</u> with a passive space. If neither of the signals is identically zero, we refer to <u>transmission</u> with an active space. For transmission with a passive space, the value of a, which is

<sup>\*</sup> The author has already alluded to this derivation (or its equivalent) in the preceding paragraph. (Translator)

defined by Eq. (4-4) and characterizes the optimum noise immunity, is given by

(4-10) 
$$a = \sqrt{\frac{TA_1^2(t)}{2\sigma^2}} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{2\sigma^2}} \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \Lambda_1^2(t) dt .$$

Denoting the specific energy of the signal by

(4-11) 
$$Q = T \frac{1}{\Lambda_1^2(t)} = \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \Lambda_1^2(t) dt$$

we have

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \quad \frac{Q_1}{\sigma} \quad .$$

Thus, in this case the optimum noise immunity depends only on the signal energy and is completely independent of its shape. The larger the signal energy, the larger the optimum noise immunity. However, it should not be inferred from this result alone that the use of now signal forms and the improvement of receivers cannot raise the noise immunity of systems with a passive space. In fact, the noise immunity of systems now in use may be much less than the optimum noise immunity obtained above. When this is the case, it is clear that both the improvement of receivers and the use of new signal forms, which facilitate this improvement, can increase the noise immunity, and in the most favorable cases, make it approach the optimum noise immunity. To clarify this matter, in the next two sections, we consider an example of a real system with a passive space, and we find out how close its noise immunity is to the optimum.

## 4-4. Optimum noise immunity for the classical telegraph signal

As an example of transmission with a passive space, we consider the case of the classical elementary telegraph signal, which we shall take to be

$$A_{1}(t) = U_{0} \cos \omega_{0} t , \text{ for } 0 \le t \le \tau_{0} .$$

$$A_{1}(t) = 0 , \text{ for } t < 0 \text{ or } t > \tau_{0} .$$

and

$$(4-14)$$
  $A_2(t) = 0$ .

To determine the optimum noise immanity in this case, we can take a from Eq. (4-14). According to Appendix A and Eqs. (4-11) and (4-12), the quantity  $Q_1$  which appears in

this expression is given by

(4-15) 
$$Q_1^2 = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^{\tau_0} v_0^2 dt = \frac{1}{2} v_0^2 \tau_0.$$

Therefore, for the kind of transmission under consideration, we have by (4-12)

$$\alpha = \frac{\sqrt[3]{0}\sqrt{\tau_0}}{2\sigma} .$$

According to Section 4-1, we can use the quantity a to determine the probability of error which characterizes the optimum noise immunity for this case.

4-5. Noise immunity for the classical telegraph signal and reception with a synchronous detector

Suppose to receive the signals considered in the provious section, we use a real receiver, such that the signals first go through a filter with a pass band from  $\frac{\omega_0 - \Omega_1}{2\pi}$  to  $\frac{\omega_0 + \Omega_2}{2\pi}$ , and then enter a synchronous detector. The waveform at the detector output then enters a device which reproduces the message corresponding to the first signal if the voltage on its terminals at the time  $\tau_0/2$  exceeds a certain value, and otherwise reproduces the message corresponding to the second signal. Such a process occurs, for example, when the voltage is rectified and used to activate a telegraph apparents which operates on time division.

Regarding the filter as ideal, we have

(4-17) 
$$u_{s} = \frac{U_{o}}{\pi} \left[ \text{SiAt} - \text{SiA}(t-\tau_{o}) \right] \cos \omega_{o} t$$

for the signal at the output, as can be obtained with the use of the Fourier integral, if retardation in the filter is neglected. In this formula, Si denotes the integral sine,

given by
$$(4-18) Si x = \int_{0}^{x} \frac{\sin x}{x} dx .$$

Clearly, the noise voltage after the filter consists of components with frequencies from  $\omega_0 - dL$  to  $\frac{\omega_0 + dL}{2\pi}$ , and has constant intensity  $\sigma$  in this band. According to Eq. (B-6) of Appendix B, this process can be written as

$$W_{u,\gamma}(t) = \sqrt{2} \, \overline{w}_{1,n}^{(t)}(t) \cos \omega_0 t + \sqrt{2} \, \overline{w}_{1,n}^{(t)}(t) \sin \omega_0 t$$

<sup>\*</sup> Eq. (4-17) is an approximation, which requires the (reasonable)assumption that  $\omega$  . (Translator)

where  $W_{1,n}^{\prime}(t)$  and  $W_{1,n}^{\prime\prime}(t)$  are independent normal fluctuation noises, the components of which have frequencies from 0 to  $n/T = \Omega L/2\pi$ , and have constant intensity  $\sigma$  in this band. Thus, if the signal  $\Lambda_1(t)$  is sent, the sum voltage after the filter is

The synchronous detector, as is well-known, gives at its output a voltage proportional to the amplitude of the component which coincides in phase with that of the received signal, and does not respond to the component which is  $90^{\circ}$  out of phase with the received signal. As stipulated, the output device reproduces the message corresponding to the signal  $A_1(t)$  or  $A_2(t)$ , depending on the value of the voltage at the detector output at the time  $t = \tau_0/2$ . Designating this value by  $U_d$ , we obtain

(4-20) 
$$v_{d}' = \frac{v_{o}}{\pi} 2 \operatorname{Si} \frac{d \overline{v}_{o}}{2} + \sqrt{2} w_{1,n}''(\tau_{o}/2)$$

if  $\Lambda_1(t)$  is transmitted, and

(4-21) 
$$U_{d}^{"} = \sqrt{2} W_{1,n}^{"} (\tau_{0}/2) ,$$

if  $\Lambda_2(t)$  is transmitted, i.e., if no signal at all is transmitted. The value of  $\kappa_{1,n}^{(1)}(\tau_0/2)$  is a random variable; according to Eq. (C-2) of Appendix C, it can be expressed as

(4-22) 
$$W_{1,n}^{(1)}(\tau_0/2) = \sigma \sqrt{M/2\pi} \Theta$$

where  $\theta$  is a normal random variable. We assume that the output device reproduces the message corresponding to the first signal if

$$(4-23) U_{d} > U_{n} = \frac{U_{o}}{\pi} \operatorname{Si} \frac{\mathbf{L} \tau_{o}}{2}$$

i.e., if  $U_{\mathbf{d}}$  is less than half the rectified signal voltage at that moment, and otherwise reproduces the message corresponding to the second signal.

We now find the probability that the second message is reproduced instead of the first, i.e., the probability that U<sub>d</sub> does not satisfy the inequality (4-23). This probability is

$$(4-24) P(\Lambda_2 \text{ instead of } \Lambda_1) = P(U_d^{\dagger} < U_n) = P(\Theta < -\beta) .$$

35

whore we have introduced the symbol

(4-25) 
$$\beta = (U_0/\sigma)(1/\pi dL)^{1/2} Si(dL_{\tau_0}/2)$$

according to Eq. (2-48), this means that

(4-26) 
$$P(A_2 \text{ intend of } A_1) = V(\beta).$$

Similarly, we have

(4-27) 
$$P(\Lambda_1 \text{ instead of } \Lambda_2) = P(U_d^{\prime\prime} > U_n) = P(\theta > \beta) = V(\beta) .$$

It follows from Eqs. (4-25) and (4-27) that

$$(4-28) P_{E} = V(\beta)$$

for the given means of reception.

To obtain the minimum probability of error, we must try to make  $\beta$  as large as possible. First we find the dependence of  $\beta$  on the filter bandwidth  $\mathcal{M}_{\pi}$ . To do so, we rewrite Eq. (4-25) as

(4-29) 
$$\beta = (U_0/\sigma)(\tau_0/2\pi)^{1/2} \frac{\text{Si } x}{\sqrt{x}}$$

where

The dependence of Si  $x/\sqrt{x}$  on x is shown in Figure 4-3. As can be seen from the figure, this quantity has its maximum value of 1.14 for x=2.1. Hence, for the given means of recoption, the optimum filter bandwidth is

$$1.34/\tau = 4.2/\pi\tau_0 = 1.34/\tau$$

and the maximum value of  $\beta$  for this bandwidth is

(4-31) 
$$\beta_{\text{max}} = 0.455 \text{ U}_{0} \sqrt{\tau_{0}} / \sigma = 0.91 \text{ Q}_{1} / \sqrt{2} \sigma .$$

Thus, for the case considered in this section, the probability of error is determined by  $\beta$ , just as in the case of ideal reception it is determined by  $\alpha$ , in accordance with (4-8). Comparing (4-31) and (4-16), we see that  $\beta_{\max}$  is somewhat less than  $\alpha$ , which means that even when the bandwidth is optimum, the means of reception we are considering gives somewhat larger error probabilities than would be obtained with the ideal receiver.

We now find the value of the efficiency coefficient (introduced in Section 4-2) for the means of recoption under consideration. Clearly, in the present case, when the bandwidth is optimum, this coefficient equals

$$(4-32) \qquad (\beta_{\text{max}}/\alpha)^2 = 0.83$$

Thus, by using the ideal receiver, the signal energy can be lowered by a factor of 0.85 while keeping the same probability of error. It follows from this that the means of reception in question is very close to being ideal in its noise immunity.

4-6. Noise immunity for the classical telegraph signal and reception with an ordinary detector

We now consider the probability of error in the case where an ordinary detector is used instead of a synchronous detector in the receiver analyzed in the proceding section. In this case, the rectified voltage depends on the amplitude of the waveform which is the sum of the signal and noise at the filter output. Suppose that the recoiver reproduces the first message if at the time  $\tau_0/2$  this amplitude  $U_f$  at the filter output exceeds half the signal amplitude, i.e., if

(4-33) 
$$U_{f} > (U_{o}/\pi) \operatorname{Si}(\mathcal{A}_{\tau_{o}}/2) - U_{n}$$
,

1

and reproduces the second message if this inequality is not satisfied. Rice has calculated the probability that the amplitude of the sum of a sine wave and random noise is less than a given value. Using his results, which he presented in the form of curves, we can calculate the value of the probability that at the time  $\tau_0/2$  the amplitude of the sum of the signal and the noise is less than  $U_n$ , i.e., that an error occurs. We designate this probability by  $P(A_2 \text{ instead of } A_1)$ . Then, we find the probability that the noise exceeds the value  $U_n$  in the absence of any signal disturbance, i.e., that the signal  $A_2(t)$  is interpreted as the signal  $A_1(t)$ . This probability has been given by many authors including Rice, and is.

(4-34) 
$$P(\Lambda_1 \text{ instead of } \Lambda_2) = \exp(-U_n^2/2H^2),$$
 where H is the effective value of the noise, which, according to (2-57), is  $\sigma \sqrt{\Omega/\pi}$  in our case. Substituting this value and the value of  $U_n$  into (4-34), we obtain (4-35) 
$$P(\Lambda_1 \text{ instead of } \Lambda_2) = \exp(-\beta^2/2),$$
 where  $\beta$  is defined by Eq. (4-25).

Assuming that the signals  $\Lambda_1(t)$  and  $\Lambda_2(t)$  are equally likely to be transmitted, we have for the probability of error

$$P_{E} = 0.5 P(A_{1} \text{ instead of } A_{2}) + 0.5 P(A_{2} \text{ instead of } A_{1})$$
.

<sup>\*</sup>S. O. Rice, "Mathematical analysis of random noise", Bell Syst. Tech. J., 1944-5, Sect. 3-10. \*\*Dp. (4-34) is just the integral from 0 to Un of the probability density of the Rayleigh distribution. (Translator)

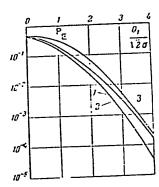
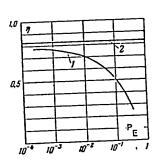


Fig. 4-4. Probability of error for the signal with rectangular envelope. Curve 1 — ideal receiver; curve 2 — synchronous receiver; curve 3 — ordinary receiver; Q<sub>1</sub> is defined by Eq. (4-15).

Fig. 4–5. Efficiency coefficient for the signal with rectangular envelope. Curve 1 — ordinary receiver, curve 2 — synchronous receiver.



ŧ

This probability is plotted as curve 3 in Figure 4-4 for the case of optimum bandwidth (given here also by Eq. (4-30)). Moreover, for comparison, we have indicated the probability of error for the case of reception with a synchronous detector (curve 2) and for the case of the ideal receiver (curve 1). In all cases we take as the abscissa the quantity  $Q_1/\sqrt{2}$  o, where  $Q_1^2$  is the specific energy given by Eq. (4-15). In Figure 4-5, curve 1 shows the dependence of the efficiency coefficient on  $P_{\rm E}$ , for the kind of reception analyzed in this section. In this case, the efficiency coefficient is the square of the ratio of the abscissas of the curves 1 and 2 in Figure 4-4, taken at a given value of  $P_{\rm E}$ . The straight line labelled 2 in this figure shows for comparison the value 0.83 of the efficiency coefficient for reception with a synchronous detector.

### 4-7. Results on the noise immunity of systems with a passive space

As just shown, the optimum noise immunity for constant noise intensity with this means of communication is completely determined by the quantity

$$Q_1^2 = T \overline{A_1^2(t)} = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} A_1^2(t) dt$$
,

i.e., by the signal energy. The shape of the signal does not affect the optimum noise immunity. Using the classical telegraph signal and receivers with optimum bandwidth (which were considered in Sections 4-5 and 4-6), we obtain a noise immunity which is quite close to optimum, and which is somewhat larger for the synchronous detector than for the ordinary detector. Thus, it follows that the application of methods of reception which differ from those considered in Sections 4-5 and 4-6 cannot substantially increase the noise immunity, when the signal energy is kept constant. This is the state of affairs provided that the shape, magnitude, and time of arrival of the signal are known, and the noise is of the normal fluctuation type. However, it cannot be inferred from this that one should always use the means of transmission and reception discussed here when dealing with telegraphy with a passive space. In many cases it can happen that other means of transmission and reception are more suitable, for example, because of less influence of fading, impulse noise, etc.

<sup>\*</sup> I.e., systems with a passive space. (Translator)

#### 4-8. The optimum communication system with an active space

In this and the following sections, we shall consider the optimum noise immunity of systems in which the signals can take on two values  $\Lambda_1(t)$  and  $\Lambda_2(t)$ , neither of which is identically zero. First of all, we try to find the optimum system, i.e., the one which furnishes the largest possible noise immunity for a given signal energy  $Q^2$ . To do this, it is clear that we should select signals for which the quantity

(4-36) 
$$a^2 = \frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} (\Lambda_1(t) - \Lambda_2(t))^2 dt = \frac{1}{2\sigma^2} T \overline{(\Lambda_1(t) - \Lambda_2(t))^2}$$

which determines the optimum noise immunity is a maximum under the constraints

(4-37) 
$$\int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \Lambda_1^2(t) dt = T \overline{\Lambda_1^2(t)} \leq Q^2 , \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \Lambda_2^2(t) dt = T \overline{\Lambda_2^2(t)} \leq Q^2 .$$

Since we have

$$\int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} (\Lambda_1(t) - \Lambda_2(t))^2 dt = 2 \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \Lambda_1^2(t) dt + 2 \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \Lambda_2^2(t) dt - \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} (\Lambda_1(t) + \Lambda_2(t))^2 dt .$$

to obtain the maximum of this expression we must make the first two integrals as large as possible and the last integral as small as possible. The maximum value of the first two integrals which is consistent with the conditions (4-37) is obtained by taking

(4-38) 
$$\int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} A_1^2(t) dt = \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} A_2^2(t) dt = Q^2.$$

The third intogral cannot take on negative values. Therefore, when

(4-39) 
$$A_1(t) = -A_2(t) .$$

it assumes its minimum value of zero. There is no contradiction between (4-38) and (4-39).

Thus  $\alpha$ , and therefore the optimum noise immunity, is a maximum if  $A_1(t)$  and  $A_2(t)$  are equal in absolute value, opposite in sign, and have the maximum permissible signal energy. The shape of the signals has no influence on the optimum noise immunity, and can be arbitrary. For this optimum state of affairs, it is clear that the quantity  $\alpha$ , which determines the optimum noise immunity is equal to

mines the optimum noise immunity is equal to 
$$(4-40) \qquad \alpha = \left[ (2/\sigma^2) \int_{-T/2}^{A_1^2} A_1^2(t) dt \right] = \sqrt{2} Q / \sigma .$$

This value determines the optimum noise immunity which can be obtained for operation with an active space and an arbitrary system with two discrete signals, provided that the maximum signal energy is specified. Comparing the value of a just obtained with the value of a for operation with a passive space (as given by Eq. (4-12)), we see that in the optimum case we can decrease the specific signal energy  $Q^2$  by a factor of 4, while keeping the same value of a, and consequently the same probability of error.

Suppose that for the signal  $\Lambda_1(t)$  in the optimum system we take the signal given by Eq. (4-13), and use for the receiver an optimum bandwidth filter (given by Eq. (4-30)), a synchronous detector, and an output device which reproduces the first signal if the voltage on its terminals at time  $\tau_0/2$  is positive, and the second signal if the voltage is negative. Then, the efficiency coefficient for reception is  $\eta = 0.83$ , as in the case considered in Section 4-5. This is easily seen by repeating in the present context the considerations of Section 4-5. We note that for this method of reception the noise immunity is close to the optimum.

# 4-9. Noise immunity for frequency shift keying

By frequency shift keying we mean transmission which uses the signals

By frequency shift with 
$$A_1(t) = U_0 \cos(\omega_1 t + \phi_1)$$
, for  $0 \le t \le \tau_0$ ,  $A_1(t) = 0$ , for  $t \le 0$  or  $t > \tau_0$ ,  $A_2(t) = U_0 \cos(\omega_2 t + \phi_2)$ , for  $0 \le t \le \tau_0$ ,  $A_2(t) = 0$ , for  $t \le 0$  or  $t > \tau_0$ .

For this communication system

Thiration system
$$a^{2} = \frac{1}{2\sigma^{2}} \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} (\Lambda_{1}(t) - \Lambda_{2}(t))^{2} dt = \frac{U_{0}^{2}}{2\sigma^{2}} \int_{0}^{T_{0}} \left\{ 1 + \frac{1}{2} \cos \left(2\omega_{1}t + 2\beta_{1}\right) + \frac{1}{2} \cos\left(2\omega_{2}t + 2\beta_{2}\right) - \cos\left[\left(\omega_{1} + \omega_{2}\right)t + \beta_{1} + \beta_{2}\right] - \cos\left[\left(\omega_{1} - \omega_{2}\right)t + \beta_{1} - \beta_{2}\right] \right\} dt$$

In doing the integral, the second, third, and fourth terms in the curly brackets give quantities which go to zero as  $\omega_1$  and  $\omega_2$  increase; we assume that  $\omega_1$  and  $\omega_2$  are large

so that these terms can be neglected. Then after integration and some manipulation, we

obtain
$$\alpha^{2} = \frac{Q^{2}}{\sigma^{2}} \left\{ 1 - \frac{\sin[(\omega_{1} - \omega_{2})\tau_{0} + \beta_{1} - \beta_{2}] - \sin(\beta_{1} - \beta_{2})}{(\omega_{1} - \omega_{2})\tau_{0}} \right\}$$

where

where 
$$Q^2 = \frac{U_0^2 \tau_0}{2}$$

is the specific energy of the signals. The value of a so obtained depends on  $\theta_1 - \theta_2$ . the difference of the initial phases. If the frequency shift keying is produced by changing the circuit parameters of an oscillator, then  $\phi_1=\phi_2$ , and the expression simplifies. In this case we have

(4-44) 
$$a^{2} = \frac{Q^{2}}{\sigma^{2}} \left\{ 1 - \frac{\sin(\omega_{1} - \omega_{2})\tau_{0}}{(\omega_{1} - \omega_{2})\tau_{0}} \right\} .$$

The dependence of the expression in curly brackets on  $(\omega_1^{-}\omega_2^{}) au_0^{}$  is shown in Figure 4-6. We can draw the following conclusions from an examination of this figure.

1. For the kind of operation in question, the largest optimum noise immunity is obtained for the frequency difference

$$(4-45) \qquad (\omega_1^{-\omega_2})/2\pi = 0.7/\tau_0.$$

For smaller differences, the optimum noise immunity becomes smaller. This circumstance allows one to determine the minimum frequency bandwidth below which one should not go if one wishes to avoid loss of noise immunity.

2. For the kind of operation in question, and for the optimum frequency difference, the value of  $a^2$  is 1.2  $Q^2/\sigma^2$ , i.e., 2.4 times larger than the value obtained for transmission with a passive space, if in both cases the specific signal energy  $q^2$  is identical. Thus, the optimum noise immunity for frequency shift keying is not much larger than the optimum noise immunity obtained for the operation with a passive space analyzed in Section 4-4. Moreover, if we bear in mind that in the latter case, according to Sections 4-5 and 4-6, we can come very close to the optimum noise immunity, then we are lcd to the conclusion that we cannot get appreciably more noise immunity with frequency shift keying (in the case of undistorted signals and normal fluctuation noise) than with classical amplitude modulation. The gain in noise immunity which is observed when changing from amplitude to

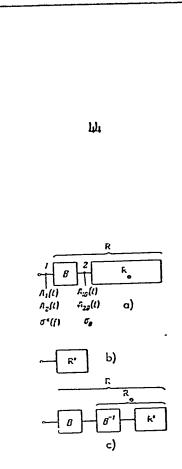


Fig. 4-7.  $R_o$  is the ideal receiver for the signals  $A_{10}(t)$  and  $A_{20}(t)$  and noise with constant intensity  $\sigma_o$ ; R is the ideal receiver for the signals  $A_1(t)$  and  $A_2(t)$  and noise with intensity  $\sigma^*(f)$ ; B is the four-pole with transfer coefficient  $|K| = \sigma_o/\sigma^*(f)$ ;  $B^{-1}$  is the four-pole with transfer coefficient  $K^{-1}$ .

frequency modulation (for short wave operation) must evidently be ascribed to signal distortion produced by fading.

4-10. Optimum noise immunity for normal fluctuation noise with frequency-dependent intensity

Until this section, we have considered normal fluctuation noise consisting of a large number of very short pulses which have a constant intensity. In Appendix D it is shown that noise consisting of pulses of arbitrary shape can be written as

(4-46) 
$$v_{\mu_0}^*(t) = \sum_{i=\mu}^{4} \left[ \frac{\sigma^*(i/t)}{\sqrt{r}} \left( e_{2i-1}^* \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} it + e_{2i}^* \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} it \right) \right]$$

if we take into account components with frequencies from  $\mu/T$  to  $\sqrt[3]{T}$ ; here the  $\theta^*$  are (mutually) independent normal random variables. This expression differs from (2-54) in that here the amplitude of a noise component depends on its frequency. We now explain how the case of the noise (4-46) can be reduced to the case considered previously.

Suppose that the received signal can again take on two values  $A_1(t)$  and  $A_2(t)$ , and suppose that to the signal is added the noise  $W_{\mu,\nu}^*(t)$  with the intensity  $\sigma^*(f)$ , which varies with the frequency. We use the receiver R prepared according to the scheme shown in Figure 4-7a. In this scheme B designates an equalizer, i.e., a linear device which has

$$k(f) = \frac{k_0}{\sigma^*(f)}$$

for the amplitude of its transfer function, where  $k_0$  is a constant. The phase of the equalizer transfer function can be arbitrary. In going through the equalizer, the noise will be altered; instead of the noise  $W_{\mu,\nu}^{ij}(t)$  with intensity  $\sigma^{ij}(f)$  acting at the point 1, we obtain at the point 2 the noise  $W_{\mu,\nu}(t)$  which (according to Appendix 2) is also normal fluctuation noise, but which has the intensity

$$\sigma_0 = o^*(f)k(f) = k_0$$

i.e., constant intensity. The signals also change their form in going through the equalizer; let them have the forms  $A_{10}(t)$  and  $A_{20}(t)$  at the point 2. Clearly, the receiver R produces an error if and only if the receiver R produces an error. Thus, the probability of error of the receiver R for the signals  $A_1(t)$  and  $A_2(t)$  and for noise with intensity

 $\sigma^{2}(f)$  equals the probability of error of the receiver  $R_{o}$  for the signals  $\Lambda_{10}(t)$  and  $\Lambda_{20}(t)$  and for noise with intensity  $\sigma_{o}$ . Thus, in order for the receiver R to give the smallest probability of error, it is clear that we should choose the receiver  $R_{o}$  to be ideal in the sense of Section 3-2.

The receiver R just obtained is ideal for reception of the signals  $A_1(t)$  and  $A_2(t)$  in the presence of noise with intensity  $\sigma^*(f)$ . Indeed, it gives the least possible probability of error for receivers constructed according to the scheme of Figure 4-7a, and moreover, this scheme can be used to construct a receiver with the same probability of error as any other receiver. In fact, an arbitrary receiver R' (see Figure 4-7b) is equivalent to the receiver shown in Figure 4-7c, where  $B^{-1}$  designates the linear four-pole inverse to the four-pole B, and the receiver with the diagram shown in Figure 4-7c reduces to a receiver with the diagram shown in Figure 4-7c reduces to a receiver with the diagram shown in Figure 4-7a. The optimum noise immunity is characterized by the probability of error of the ideal receiver just obtained. Obviously, this probability of error is that of an ideal receiver for the signals  $A_{10}(t)$  and  $A_{20}(t)$  and noise with the intensity  $\sigma_0$ , which is independent of frequency. The latter probability can be determined by the formulas of Section 4-1, if in those formulas we replace  $A_1(t)$ ,  $A_2(t)$ , and  $\sigma$  by  $A_{10}(t)$ ,  $A_{20}(t)$ , and  $\sigma_0$ , respectively.

In this section we have examined a method which takes into account variable noise intensity for the case of two discrete signals. This method also works for all the other cases considered below. Therefore, we shall hereafter not be concerned any more with this matter.

# 4-11. Geometric interpretation of the material of chapter 4

In the case of two discrete signals, the domains of the ideal receiver which correspond to these signals are determined by the inequality (4-1). If instead of the inequality sign, we write on equality, then the points corresponding to the waveforms X(t) defined by this equality will form a plane. This plane, which is perpendicular to the line joining the signal points  $A_1(t)$  and  $A_2(t)$  is a boundary plane, dividing the domains of the signals  $A_1(t)$  and  $A_2(t)$ . In the case where the signals are equiprobable, the plane passes through the midpoint of the line joining  $A_1(t)$  and  $A_2(t)$ . An error

occurs when the noise vector adds to the radius vector of the transmitted signal and gives a resultant vector with a terminus lying on the other side of the boundary plane. Since all directions of the noise vector are equiprobable, it is natural that the probability of error depends only on the distance of the boundary plane from the signal points, or equivalently, on the distance between the signals, i.e., on the quantity  $(\Lambda_1(t)-\Lambda_2(t))^2$ , as already shown.

In the case of transmission with a passive space, the radius vector of one of the signals is zero. In this case, the optimum noise immunity depends only on the quantity  $\frac{\lambda_1^2(t)}{\lambda_1}$ , which determines the distance between the end of the radius vector of the signal A<sub>1</sub>(t) and the origin of coordinates. To find the optimum communication system (Section 4-8), we posed ourselves the problem of finding the system which uses two signals with radius vectors not exceeding a certain quantity in length, and which has the maximum distance between the ends of these vectors. Naturally, such a system is obtained by taking radius vectors of the maximum possible length, and then orienting them in opposite directions, i.e., by setting one of the vectors equal to the negative of the other.

#### CHAPTER 5

HOISE IMMUNITY FOR SIGNALS WITH MANY DISCRETE VALUES

# 5-1. General statement of the problem

(5-2)

In the preceding chapter we considered the noise immunity for the case where the signal can take on only two values. In this chapter we are concerned with a similar question, but for the more general case where the messages and therefore the signals can have m discrete values. Let these signal values be

and let us find the probability of error for the reception of such signals with the ideal receiver considered in Chapter 3. This probability will obviously characterize the optimum noise immunity.

Suppose the signal  $A_1(t)$  was sent. Then the waveform acting upon the receiver is  $\chi(t) = \psi_{\mu_{\bullet}}(t) + A_{1}(t)$ .

Then clearly the receiver will reproduce the message corresponding to the transmitted signal  $k_1(t)$  if (according to Section 3-2) we have

$$\frac{1}{T} \frac{(x(t)-A_1(t))^2}{(x(t)-A_1(t))^2} - \sigma^2 \ln P(A_1) < T \overline{(x(t)-A_1(t))^2} - \sigma^2 \ln P(A_1)$$

for all j = 2,...,m. An error occurs if even one of the inequalities (5-3) is not satisfied. Substituting the value of X(t) from (5-2) into Eq. (5-3), we obtain after some manipulation

manipulation
$$(5-4) \qquad \text{2T} \, \frac{\mathbb{W}_{\mu,\nu}(t)(\mathbb{A}_{j}(t)-\mathbb{A}_{1}(t))}{\mathbb{V}_{\mu,\nu}(t)(\mathbb{A}_{j}(t)-\mathbb{A}_{1}(t))} < \mathbb{T} \, \left( \frac{\mathbb{A}_{j}(t)-\mathbb{A}_{1}(t))^{2}}{\mathbb{P}(\mathbb{A}_{j})} + \sigma^{2} \, \ln \frac{\mathbb{P}(\mathbb{A}_{1})}{\mathbb{P}(\mathbb{A}_{j})} \right)$$

The probability that this system of inequalities is fulfilled is the probability of correct reception of the signal  $A_1(t)$  with an ideal receiver. Similar relations obtain for the other signals. In the general case, the size of this probability is given by integrals which are not cvaluated. Therefore, in what follows we shall examine only the most interesting special cases.

5-2. Optimum noise immunity for orthogonal equiprobable signals with the same energy We now consider the case where

(5-5) 
$$T = A_1^2(t) = Q^2$$
,  $A_1(t)A_1(t) = 0$ ,  $P(A_1) = 1/n$ .

for i, j = 1, 2,..., m, but i  $\neq$  j. In this case, using (2-60) and (2-61), we easily reduce the inequality (5-4) to

the inequality (5-4) to 
$$\sigma \sqrt{2T} \sqrt{\frac{2}{A_{j}^{2}(t)}} \Theta_{j} - \sigma \sqrt{2T} \sqrt{\frac{2}{A_{1}^{2}(t)}} \Theta_{1} < T \left( A_{j}^{2}(t) + A_{1}^{2}(t) \right) .$$

or

for  $j=2, 3, \ldots, m$ , where the  $\theta_j$  are (mutually) independent normal random variables. Suppose  $\theta_1$  satisfies the condition

$$y < \theta_1 < y + dy$$

According to (2-34), the probability of this is

(5-8) 
$$\frac{dy}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp(-y^2/2) .$$

In this case, for the j'th inequality (5-6) to be satisfied, we must have

(5-9) 
$$\Theta_{j} < \frac{\sqrt{z} Q}{\sigma} + y .$$

According to (2-48), the probability of this is

(5-10) 
$$1 - V(\frac{\sqrt{z} Q}{\sigma} + y)$$
.

Since all the  $\theta_j$  are independent, the probability that all the m - 1 inequalities (5-6) and the inequality (5-7) are simultaneously fulfilled is

(5-11) 
$$\frac{dy}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp(-y^2/2) \left[ 1 - V(\frac{\sqrt{2} Q}{\sigma} + y) \right]^{m-1} .$$

From this it follows that the probability that all the inequalities (5-6) are satisfied for arbitrary  $\theta_1$  is

(5-12) 
$$P(A_1 \text{ correct}) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \left[ 1 - V(\frac{\sqrt{2} \Omega}{\sigma} + y) \right]^{m-1} \exp(-y^2/2) dy$$

This probability is the probability that the transmitted signal  $\Lambda_1(t)$  is correctly interproted by the ideal receiver. In the case under consideration, this probability is the same for all the symbols and characterizes the optimum noise immunity.

## 5-3. Example of telegraphy using 32 orthogonal signals

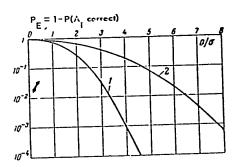
On the basis of the theory presented in the precoding section, we now calculate the optimum noise immunity for the case of telegraphic communication where the signals characterizing the separate letters all have the same energy  $Q^2$  and are orthogonal to one another. This will be the case if the letters are transmitted as sine waves which have the same amplitude  $U_0$  and duration  $\tau_0$  for all the letters, but a different frequency for each letter. Under these conditions, the waveform representing the kith letter is

$$A_{k}(t) = U_{0}\cos(\omega_{k}t + p') \text{ for } 0 \le t \le \tau_{0} .$$

$$A_{k}(t) = 0 \text{ for } t \le 0 \text{ or } t > \tau_{0} .$$

The scalar product of the waveform  $h_k(t)$  and the waveform  $h_i(t)$  corresponding to the i'th letter is equal to

ith letter is equal to
$$(5-14) \quad \overline{A_{k}(t)A_{i}(t)} = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} A_{k}(t)A_{i}(t)dt = \frac{U^{2}}{2T} \left[ \frac{\sin(\omega_{k}-\omega_{i})\tau_{0}}{\omega_{k}-\omega_{i}} + \frac{\sin[(\omega_{k}+\omega_{i})\tau_{0}+2\not p] - \sin 2\not p}{\omega_{k}+\omega_{i}} \right]$$



50

Fig. 5-1. Probability of error with the ideal receiver for 32 signals with the same a priori probability. Curve 1 — transmission of orthogonal signals; curve 2 — transmission of five two-valued pulses.

If we assume that  $(\omega_k^-\omega_1^-)\tau_0^-/2\pi$  and  $(\omega_k^+\omega_1^-)\tau_0^-/2\pi$  are integers, then the waveforms  $A_k^-(t)$  and  $A_1^-(t)$  are orthogonal, since the expression (5-14) will then vanish. Obviously, these waveforms can also be regarded as orthogonal if  $(\omega_k^-\omega_1^-)\tau_0^-/2\pi$  is an integer and  $\omega_k^+\omega_1^-\gg |\omega_k^-\omega_1^-|$ . Thus, the signals are orthogonal if their frequencies are separated from one another by multiples of  $1/\tau_0^-$ , and if their sums are much greater than their differences. The signals are also orthogonal if the separate letters are transmitted as arbitrary waveforms which do not overlap, for in this case obviously

(5-15) 
$$\frac{+T/2}{\Lambda_{1}(t)\Lambda_{k}(t)} = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \Lambda_{1}(t)\Lambda_{k}(t)dt = 0,$$

since for any t at least one of the factors inside the integral vanishes. Furthermore, if we assume that the probability of transmission of each of the signals is the same and that m = 32, then by numerical integration of Eq. (5-12), we obtain the result represented by curve 1 in Figure 5-1, where the quantity  $Q/\sigma$  is plotted as the abcissa, and the probability  $P_E = 1 - P(A_i \text{ correct})$  is plotted as the ordinate. Later we shall compare the probability of error obtained in this way with the probability of error for other means of communication.

#### 5-4. Optimum noise immunity for compound signals

Very often complicated signals consist of a sequence of simpler signals. Thus, for example, in telegraphy the signals corresponding to the letters and characters almost always consist of separate two-valued elementary signals which follow each other in sequence and have the same length. We now find the optimum noise immunity for such signals. We begin with the general case.

Suppose that the first elementary signal which makes up the compound signal can have one of the following values:

(5-16) 
$$B_1(t), B_2(t), ..., B_m(t)$$

Suppose that the second elementary signal begins at a time  $\tau$  after the beginning of the first signal. Then it will obviously have one of the following values:

(5-17) 
$$B_1(t-\tau), B_2(t-\tau), \dots, B_m(t-\tau)$$
.

Finally, the fith elementary signal will have one of the following values:

(5-18) 
$$B_1(t-f_{\tau+\tau}), B_2(t-f_{\tau+\tau}), ..., B_m(t-f_{\tau+\tau}).$$

If the compound signal consists of n elementary signals, then clearly it has the following form:

(5-19) 
$$B_{kl}(t) + B_{k2}(t-\tau) + \cdots + B_{kn}(t-n\tau+\tau)$$
,

where  $k_1, \dots, k_n$  are certain integers which can take on values from 1 to m, depending on which compound signal is sent. In the case under consideration, the compound signal can have m values. We assume that the separate elementary signals which follow each other in sequence do not overlap. Under these conditions  $B_i(t-\kappa\tau)$  and  $B_j(t-\kappa\tau)$  will be orthogonal for arbitrary  $k \neq \ell$ , as was shown in the preceding section.

We now find the probability of error for the compound signal considered here, when it is received on an ideal receiver. Obviously, for the compound signal in question to be received without error by the ideal receiver, it is necessary and sufficient that all the elementary signals of which it consists be received without error by the receiver.

We now show that errors in the separate elementary signals are independent under the conditions being considered and for reception with the ideal receiver. In fact, according to Section 5-1, if the 2'th elementary signal has the form

$$B_i(t-\ell\tau+\tau)$$
.

then it will be received without error on the ideal receiver provided that the noise has values such that the random variables

(5-20) 
$$\overline{W_{\mu,\nu}(t) \left[B_{j}(t-\ell\tau+\tau) - B_{i}(t-\ell\tau+\tau)\right]}, j=1, 2,...,m,$$

have values satisfying the inequalities

(5-21) 2T 
$$W_{\mu,J}(t) \left[B_{j}(t-l\tau+\tau) - B_{i}(t-l\tau+\tau)\right] \left\langle T \left[\left(B_{j}(t-l\tau+\tau) - B_{i}(t-l\tau+\tau)\right)\right]^{2} + \sigma^{2} \ln \frac{P(B_{i})}{P(B_{j})}\right\rangle$$

Moreover, the kith elementary signal, which we assume has the value

$$B_{i}$$
 (t - k $\tau$  +  $\tau$ )

will be received without error if the random variables

$$w_{\mu,j}(t) \left[B_{j}(t-k\tau+\tau) - B_{i,j}(t-k\tau+\tau)\right]$$

have values satisfying the inequalities

have values satisfying the inequalities
$$(5-23) \quad 27\pi_{\mu,\lambda}(t) \left[B_{j}(t-k\tau+\tau)-B_{i}(t-k\tau+\tau)\right] < T\left[B_{j}(t-k\tau+\tau)-B_{i}(t-k\tau+\tau)\right]^{2} + \sigma^{2} \ln \frac{P(B_{i})}{P(B_{j})}$$

Since the functions in the squere brackets in the expressions (5-20) and (5-22) are orthogonal, then, according to Section 2-4, these expressions are mutually independent random variables, which means also that the inequalities (5-21) and (5-23) are satisfied independently of each other. This proves the statement made about the independence of the error probabilities of the separate elementary signals.

The probability of correct reception of each elementary signal can be determined by the methods presented earlier. Obviously, in the case being considered, these probabilities are the same for all elementary signals (we assume that their a priori probabilities are the same) and are denoted by P(corr. elem., Since as remarked, errors in the separate elementary signals are independent of each other, then obviously, the probability that all n elementary signals which form one compound signal are correctly received, i.e., that the compound signal is correctly received, has the form

(5-24) 
$$1 - P_E = [P(corr. clem.)]^n$$

# 5-5. Example of a five-valued code

We now apply the theory of the preceding section to f. m. telegraphy using a fivevalued code. In this communication system, the signal corresponding to one character consists of five elementary signals, which follow one another in sequence, and each of which has the form discussed in Section 4-9. We shall assume that the probabilities of both values of the elementary signal are the same. In this case

(5-25) 
$$P(error elem.) = V(\alpha) .$$

where a is defined by Eq. (4-44), and

$$\alpha^2 = Q_n^2 / \sigma^2$$

where  $\mathfrak{I}_{\mathbf{n}}^2$  is the energy of the elementary signal, provided that the frequency difference is such that the term in curly brackets in Eq. (4-44) equals unity. For this means of communication, the signal can have  $m^{2}=2^{5}=32$  different versions.

We now compare the optimum noise immunity for the signals in question with the noise

immunity for the orthogonal signals studied in Section 5-3, which can also have 32 different vorsions. To do this, we express  $\mathfrak{I}_n^2$  in terms of the specific energy of the whole signal by writing  $q^2 = 5 q_n^2$  . We obtain

(5-27) 
$$a^2 = 0.2 Q^2/\sigma^2$$

whence, according to Eqs. (5-24) and (5-27), the probability of error of the compound

signal is 
$$P_{E} = 1 - [P(corr. olem.)]^{n} = 1 - [1 - V(\sqrt{0.2} Q/\sigma)]^{5}$$

The value of this quantity is given by curve 2 in Figure 5-1, where  $2/\sigma$  is plotted as the abcissa and  $P_{\mathbf{g}}$  as the ordinate. Comparing this curve with curve 1 of the same figure, which gives the probability of error for a similar system with orthogonal signals, we see that the orthogonal system is more advantageous. To obtain the same probability of error with the orthogonal system, we need a signal energy approximately 3.5 times less than with the compound signal. On the other hand, the bandwidth occupied by the compound signal is approximately 3 times less, since in this case instead of 32 frequencies we need transmit only two frequencies, and moreover, the signals on these two frequencies have to be only 5 times shorter than in the case of the orthogonal signals.

# 5-6. The optimum system for signals with many discrete values

We now find the optimum system containing m signals, just as in Section 4-3 we found the optimum system containing two signals. Suppose we have a system of equiprobable signals

signals (5-29) 
$$\Lambda_1(t), \Lambda_2(t), \dots, \Lambda_m(t)$$

Wo shall show how to decrease the average energy of these signals without changing the optimum noise immunity. The optimum noise immunity is defined by the probability that the inequalities (5-4), which involve the signal differences, are satisfied. Thus, if we introduce the new signals

(5-30) 
$$A_{k}^{'}(t) = A_{k}(t) + B(t)$$

then the inequalities (5-4) are not changed, which means that the optimum noise immunity for the signals  $A_k(t)$  and  $A_k'(t)$  is the same. Geometrically, this means that if all the

points corresponding to the signals undergo parallel translations by the same amount, then the distances between them and the optimum noise immunity determined by these distances, do not change.

We now find what the waveform B(t) should be to make the average signal energy

(5-31) 
$$Q_{av}^2 = \frac{T}{m} \sum_{k=1}^{m} \overline{A_k^{(2)}(t)}$$

a minimum. Using (5-30), we obtain

a minimum. Using (5-30), we obtain
$$Q_{av}^2 = \frac{T}{m} \left\{ \sum_{k=1}^m \overline{\Lambda_k^2(t)} + 2 \left[ \sum_{k=1}^m \Lambda_k(t) \right] B(t) + m \overline{B^2(t)} \right\}.$$

If we change B(t) while keeping  $B^2(t)$  constant, then the first and last terms in the curly brackets do not change, and a minimum is obtained when B(t) has the opposite sign to  $\sum_{k=1}^{m} A_k(t)$ , i.e., when  $B(t) = -\lambda \sum_{k=1}^{m} A_k(t)$ 

where  $\lambda$  is a positive number. Substituting this value of B(t) into (5-32), we obtain

(5-33) 
$$Q_{av}^{2} = \frac{T}{m} \left\{ \sum_{k=1}^{m} \overline{\Lambda_{k}^{2}(t)} - (2\lambda - m\lambda^{2}) \overline{\left[\sum_{k=1}^{m} \Lambda_{k}(t)\right]^{2}} \right\}.$$

Since in this equality the expressions under the overbars are always positive,  $Q_{\mathbf{a}\mathbf{v}}^{\mathbf{2}}$  is a minimum when  $2\lambda - m\lambda^2$  is a minimum, i.e., when  $\lambda = 1/m$ . Thus, to make the average energy of the signals Ak(t) a minimum without changing the noise immunity, we must take

(5-34) 
$$A_{i}^{\dagger}(t) = A_{i}(t) - \frac{1}{m} \sum_{k=1}^{m} A_{k}(t) .$$

It follows easily from this relation that

(5-35) 
$$\sum_{k=1}^{m} A_{k}^{i}(t) = 0 .$$

the now study the system with a signals which has the minimum average energy for a given optimum noise immunity. Since we assume that all the signals are equiprobable, we can stipulate that such a system consists of signals which are equidistant from

Take an arbitrary system of signals which are equidistant from one another, one another. say the system

for which

$$T \overline{(B_{\underline{i}}(t) - B_{\underline{k}}(t))^2} = \beta^2$$

independently of i and k (i  $\neq$  k). We now ascertain how much the energy of the signals of the system can be decreased without changing its optimum noise immunity. We form the system of signals

(5-38) 
$$B_{i}^{!}(t) = B_{i}(t) - \frac{1}{m} \sum_{k=1}^{m} B_{i}(t)$$

As already shown, this system has the same optimum noise immunity as the system of signals  $B_{1}(t)$ . The energy of the signal  $B_{1}^{\prime}(t)$  of this system is

$$T \overline{B_{1}^{t2}(t)} = \frac{T}{m^{2}} \overline{\left[ (m-1)B_{1}(t) - B_{2}(t) - \dots - B_{m}(t) \right]^{2}} =$$

$$= \frac{T}{m^{2}} \left[ (m-1)^{2} \overline{B_{1}^{2}(t)} + \overline{B_{2}^{2}(t)} + \dots + \overline{B_{2}^{2}(t)} - \dots + \overline{B_{2}^{2}(t)} - \dots + \overline{B_{2}^{2}(t)} - \dots + \overline{B_{2}^{2}(t)B_{3}(t)} - \dots - 2(m-1)\overline{B_{1}(t)B_{3}(t)} - \dots - 2(m-1)\overline{B_{1}(t)B_{m}(t)} + 2\overline{B_{2}(t)B_{3}(t)} + 2\overline{B_{2}(t)B_{4}(t)} + \dots + 2\overline{B_{3}(t)B_{m}(t)} + 2\overline{B_{3}(t)B_{4}(t)} + \dots + 2\overline{B_{3}(t)B_{m}(t)} \right].$$

+ 2B<sub>m-1</sub>(t)B<sub>m</sub>(t)].

Moroover, bearing in mind that

Moreover, bearing in mind that
$$(5-59) \quad 2B_{1}(t)B_{k}(t) = B_{1}^{2}(t) + B_{k}^{2}(t) - (B_{1}(t)-B_{k}(t))^{2} = B_{1}^{2}(t) + B_{k}^{2}(t) - \beta^{2}/T$$

we obtain after some simplification

(5-40) 
$$TB_1^{(2)}(t) = \frac{n-1}{2m} \beta^2 = Q_B^2,$$

<sup>\*</sup> The fact that the signals are equiprobable does not imply that they are equidistant from one another, as might be inferred from the wording of the text. If, however, we assume that the signals are not only equiprobable, but have the same probability of being correctly received, it follows that they are equidistant from one another. (Translator)

and similarly,

(5-41) 
$$T \frac{\overline{B_i^{*2}(t)}}{B_i^{*2}(t)} = \frac{m-1}{2} \beta^2 = Q_B^2, \quad \bullet$$

Thus, all the signals Bi(t) have the same energy QB:

To find the optimum noise immunity for this system, we form the system

(5-42) 
$$B_{i}^{(i)}(t) = B_{i}^{(t)}(t) + C(t)$$

taking C(t) to be orthogonal to all the  $B_1^!(t)$ . Moreover, let us choose C(t) so that all the signals  $B_{\hat{i}}^{**}(t)$  are mutually orthogonal, i.e., so that the equalities

$$B_{i}^{''}(t)B_{k}^{''}(t) = \overline{B_{i}^{'}(t)B_{k}^{'}(t)} + \overline{c^{2}(t)} = 0$$
,  $i \neq k$ .

are fulfilled. To do this, we must have

$$\frac{1}{c^{2}(t)} = -\frac{1}{B_{i}^{!}(t)B_{k}^{!}(t)} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{(B_{i}^{!}(t)-B_{k}^{!}(t))^{2}}{(B_{i}^{!}(t)-B_{k}^{!}(t))^{2}} - \frac{1}{2} B_{i}^{!2}(t) - \frac{1}{2} B_{k}^{!2}(t)$$

But we have

But we have 
$$\frac{(B_{i}^{!}(t)-B_{k}^{!}(t))^{2}}{(B_{i}^{!}(t)-B_{k}^{!}(t))^{2}} = \frac{(B_{i}^{!}(t)-B_{k}^{!}(t))^{2}}{(B_{i}^{!}(t)-B_{k}^{!}(t))^{2}} = \beta^{2}/T$$

so that

so that
$$\frac{1}{c^2(t)} = \frac{\beta^2}{2} - \frac{m-1}{2m} \beta^2 = \frac{\beta^2}{2m} \quad .$$

Thus, we can always choose C(t) so that the signals  $B_i^{**}(t)$  are mutually orthogonal. For this system, the energy of the signals is

(5-45) 
$$Q_{B_1}^2 = T \overline{B_i^{1/2}(t)} = T \overline{B_i^{2}(t)} + T \overline{C^2(t)} = \beta^2/2$$

Thus, the signals B; (t) have the same energy and are orthogonal. We have already found the optimum noise immunity for such signals. It is given by Eq. (5-12), whore in this case we must substitute

(5-46) 
$$Q^2 = Q_{B^{11}}^2 = \frac{1}{2} \beta^2$$

The systems of signals  $B_{\hat{i}}^{i}(t)$  and  $B_{\hat{i}}^{i}(t)$  have the same optimum noise immunity.

Thus, all systems of m signals which are equidistant from one another and which have the same 3 have the same optimum noise immunity. Systems of this type which have been obtained by the transformation (5-38) have the least possible average signal energy given by (5-41). These are the optimum systems (at least among the family of systems of equidistant signals). The optimum system of signals  $B_{i}^{"i}(t)$  given by (5-38) can be

formed from an arbitrary equidistant system  $B_{i}(t)$ , for example, from an arbitrary system of orthogonal signals which have equal energies. The optimum system is somewhat better than the orthogonal system. Indeed, for the same optimum noise immunity, the signal energy in the optimum system has to be

(5-47) 
$$Q_B^2 = \frac{m-1}{2m} \beta^2$$

whereas in the orthogonal system it is

(5-43) 
$$q^2 = q_{B_1}^2 = \beta^2/2$$

i.e., m/(m-1) times larger. However, for large m, this difference is negligible. The system considered in Section 4-8 is the special case of the optimum system for m = 2.

# 5-7. Approximate evaluation of optimum noise immunity

The method of calculating optimum noise immunity discussed in Section 5-1 is often of little practical use, since in concrete problems the calculation of the probability that the inequalities (5-4) are satisfied presents great mathematical difficulties in many cases. Therefore, it is sometimes useful to have available a simple method of obtaining an approximate value of this probability. We now discuss this method.

In order for an error to occur when the signal  $h_i(t)$  is sent, it is necessary that one or more of the inequalities (5-4) fails to be satisfied, where we replace the index l by i. Alternatively, it is necessary that one or more of the reverse inequalities be satisfied; these reverse inequalities can be written after some manipulation as

satisfied; these reverse inequalities can be written as 
$$(5-49) = \sqrt{(A_j(t)-A_i(t))^2} = \sqrt{(A_j(t)-A_i(t))^2} + \sigma^2 \ln \frac{P(A_i)}{P(A_j)}$$
,  $j = 1, 2, ..., m, i \neq j$ ,

According to (2-47), the probability that the j'th of these inequalities is satisfied is equal to

(5-50) 
$$P_{ij} = P(\theta_{ij} > \alpha_{ij}) * V(\alpha_{ij}).$$

where
$$\alpha_{i,j} = \frac{\sqrt{T(A_j(t)-A_i(t))^2}}{\sqrt{z} \sigma} + \frac{1}{2} \ln \frac{P(A_i)}{P(A_j)} - \frac{\sqrt{z} \sigma}{\sqrt{T(A_j(t)-A_i(t))^2}}$$

As is well known from probability theory, the probability P that one or more of the

ovents E1, E2, ..., E occurs always lies between the bounds

$$P(E_k)_{max} \le P \le \sum_{k=1}^{m} P(E_k)$$
.

where  $P(E_k)$  is the probability of the event  $E_k$ , and  $P(E_k)_{max}$  is the largest of the probabilitios  $P(E_1)$ ,  $P(E_2)$ ,..., $P(E_m)$ . Here P equals the quantity on the left side of the inequality if the occurrence of one of the events necessarily implies that of the other events, and P equals the quantity on the right side of the inequality if the events  $E_1,\dots,E_m$  are mutually exclusive. Using this, we can conclude that the probability  $P_{E}(\Lambda_{i})$  that one or more of the inequalities (5-49) is satisfied, or equivalently, that the transmitted signal  $h_i(t)$  is incorrectly received, satisfies the inequality

$$(5-52) (Pij)max \leqslant PE(Ai) \leqslant \sum_{j=1}^{m} Pij$$

where P<sub>ij</sub> is defined by (5-50) and (P<sub>ij</sub>)<sub>max</sub> is the maximum value of P<sub>ij</sub> when the index j ranges from 1 to m. We note that in the inequality (5-52) the term  $P_{f ij}$  should be omitted, since i  $\neq$  j in (5-49). This is accomplished automatically by setting P<sub>ii</sub> = 0. Multiplying the inequality (5-52) by the probability that the signal  $\Lambda_{\hat{1}}(t)$  is transmitted, which we designate by  $P(A_i)$ , and adding the resulting equations for i = 1, ..., m, we obtain

where

where
$$P_{E} = \sum_{i=1}^{m} P_{E}(A_{i}) P(A_{i})$$

is the probability of error for the signals in question and for reception with the ideal receiver.

# 5-8. Example of the transmission of numerals by Morse code

As an illustration of the method used in the preceding section, we determine the optimum noise immunity for the transmission of numerals with the use of Morse code. Here we shall assume that the amplitude of the signals is  ${\tt U}_{m o}$ , that the length of a dot is  $au_0$  , that the length of a dash is  $3 au_0$  , and that the space between a dot and a dash in one numeral is also  $au_0$ . We shall assume that the probability of transmission is the

								·			
					60	)					
									. <del></del> -		<sub>1</sub>
ī	<u> </u>	- [	2	3	4	5	6	7	*	•	0
-	<u> </u>	_		_ <del>_</del>	1	1	4	4	4	4	5
	1	-	4	2	. <b>.</b>  -	}-	-				2
	2	4	-	3	2	3	3	2		_	_
	3	2	3		2	2	2	2	3	4	5
-								2	2	3	4
	4 ·	4	2	2					3	4	5
- 1	5	4	3	2	ı	-	1	2	<u>"</u>	ļ	
- 1		1 1							-	ι	
		4	3	 2	1			1	2	3	4
	 6 	4	3	- 1		<u> </u> -		 	2	3	3
					1 2	2				2	3
	 6 	4	3	- 1		<u> </u> -	1 2	1			

Table 5-1

	(P)	
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	P <sub>2</sub> P <sub>1</sub> P <sub>2</sub> P <sub>1</sub>	$\begin{array}{c} P_2 & + 7P_4 + P_5 \\ 2P_1 + 3P_2 + 3P_3 + P_4 \\ 5P_2 + 2P_3 + P_4 \\ 2P_5 + 4P_2 + P_3 + 2P_4 \\ 2P_1 + 2P_2 + 2P_2 + 2P_4 \\ 2P_1 + 2P_2 + 2P_3 + 2P_4 \\ 2P_1 + 5P_2 + P_3 + 2P_4 \\ 2P_1 + 5P_2 + P_3 + P_4 \\ 3P_1 + P_2 + 2P_2 + 2P_3 + 2P_4 \\ 3P_1 + P_2 + 2P_2 + 2P_4 \\ 3P_1 + P_2 + 2P_2 + 2P_4 + 3P_5 \\ \end{array}$

Table 5-2

We denote the signal corresponding to the numeral 0 by  $A_0(t)$ , to 1 by  $A_1(t)$ , to 2 same for the various numerals. by  $A_2(t)$ ,..., to 9 by  $A_3(t)$ . Then, as can easily be verified, if we subtract the value of the signal corresponding to the numeral j from the value of the signal corresponding to the nimoral i, and if we assume that the initial times of the signals coincide and that the frequency of the waveform is much greater than  $1/\tau_0$ , we obtain

the frequency of 
$$T$$
  $(A_j(t)-A_i(t))^2 = J_{ij} U_0^2 \tau_0$ .

(5-55)

where the V ij are given in Table 5-1. Thus, according to Eq. (5-51), for this case  $a_{i,j} = \sqrt{\frac{i_i y^2 \tau_0}{2\sigma^2}} = \sqrt{\gamma_{i,j}} a' \quad .$ we have

where

where 
$$\alpha^{\circ} = \sqrt{\tau_0/2} \, T_0/\sigma \, .$$
 (5-56)

whence it follows that

whence it follows that
$$P_{ij} = V(\sqrt{\gamma_{ij}} a^{i}) \quad \text{for } j \neq i \quad .$$
(5-57)

and  $P_{ii}$  = 0, as already pointed out. On the basis of this data, we can construct the following table (Table 5-2), where we have written

Then, keeping in mind that in this case  $P(A_0) = P(A_1) = \cdots = P(A_g) = 0$ . and applying

Fig. (5-5), we obtain
$$0.8P_1 + 0.2P_2 \le P_2 \le 1.8P_1 + 2.8P_2 + 1.6P_3 + 2.2P_4 + 0.6P_5 = 0.8P_1 + 0.2P_2 \le P_2 \le 1.8P_1 + 2.8P_2 + 1.6P_3 + 2.2P_4 + 0.6P_5 = 0.8P_1 + 0.2P_2 \le P_2 \le 1.8P_1 + 2.8P_2 + 1.6P_3 + 2.2P_4 + 0.6P_5 = 0.8P_1 + 0.2P_2 \le P_2 \le 1.8P_1 + 2.8P_2 + 1.6P_3 + 2.2P_4 + 0.6P_5 = 0.8P_1 + 0.2P_2 \le P_2 \le 1.8P_1 + 2.8P_2 + 1.6P_3 + 2.2P_4 + 0.6P_5 = 0.8P_1 + 0.2P_2 \le P_2 \le 1.8P_1 + 2.8P_2 + 1.6P_3 + 2.2P_4 + 0.6P_5 = 0.8P_1 + 0.2P_2 \le P_2 \le 1.8P_1 + 0.8P_2 + 0.8P_2 + 0.8P_3 + 0.8P_3 = 0.8P_1 + 0.8P_2 \le P_2 \le 1.8P_1 + 0.8P_2 + 0.8P_3 + 0.8P_3 = 0.8P_1 + 0.8P_2 \le P_2 \le 1.8P_1 + 0.8P_2 + 0.8P_3 + 0.8P_3 = 0.8P_3 + 0.8P_3 + 0.8P_3 = 0.8P_3 = 0.8P_3 + 0.8P_3 = 0.8P_3$$

The bounds for  $P_{E^0}$  the probability of incorrect reception of a numeral, given by these inequalities, are displayed as functions of a' in Figure 5-2. As is evident from the figure, the bounds for  $P_{\underline{R}}$  lie quite close togother. These curves allow us to determine the avorago percentage of incorrectly received numerals for the case of the ideal receiver, for a given signal to noise ratic , and for a given keying speed (on which the quantity  $\tau_{0}$ depends). If we carry out articulation experiments involving the reception by ear of signals representing numerals in the presence of noise of the fluctuation type, then the percentage of numerals which are incorrectly written down must be higher than 100  $P_{\Sigma}$  , as determined from Figure 5-2. By comparing these data, we can determine how close the noise immunity for aural reception is to the optimum noise immunity, i.e., how much one can hope immunity for aurul reception is of the optimum noise immunity of this kind of communication by improving reception.

#### PART III

# TRANSMISSION OF SEPARATE PARAMETER VALUES

GENERAL THEORY OF THE INFLUENCE OF NOISE ON THE TRANSMISSION OF SEPARATE PARAMETER VALUES

In the preceding chapters we considered the transmission of discrete messages and 6-1. General considerations signals. In this part we shall consider the transmission of a message which is a parameter which can take on any value within cortain limits, and where the parameter is not transmitted continuously in time, but has its instantaneous values transmitted at certain time intervals, with a different signal being used for the transmission of each value. For example, in tolemetering we have to deal with transmission of this type. In this case the signal is a function of time and of the transmitted parameter  $\lambda_s$  which is a constant for a given signal. We shall write such a signal as

If the noise  $\ddot{\mu}_{\mu,\nu}(t)$  is added to this signal, then the waveform acting on the receiver is

If the noise 
$$\ddot{\mu}_{\mu,\nu}^{(t)}$$
 is added  $\chi(t) = \ddot{\mu}_{\mu,\nu}^{(t)} + \lambda(\lambda,t)$ .

Clearly, we would get the same waveform X(t) if another parameter, say  $\lambda'$ , was transmitted and if the noise took on a value  $W_{\mu_0 \sqrt{\phantom{1}}}(t)$  such that

and if the noise took on a variation 
$$\mu_{\bullet}$$
 and if the noise took on a variation  $\mu_{\bullet}$   $(t) + A(\lambda^{\dagger}, t) = X(t)$  •

(6-3)

This is always possible, since as already remarked, normal fluctuation noise assumes any value with some probability. It follows from what has been said that in the presence of noise one can never determine with certainty from the received signal what value of the parameter \(\lambda\) was transmitted.

In this chapter we shall determine the probability of the transmitted parameter having some value or other, when the received waveform is known. We shall find out what proporty the receiver should have in order to reproduce the most probable parameter value, givon a received waveform. We shall call such a receiver ideal. Then we shall find the amount of error obtained when the ideal receiver is used to reproduce the parameter. We shall show that the mean square error has the smallest possible value for the ideal

64

receiver, and we shall find this smallest value. This least possible error will depend on the signal form, and will characterize the optimum noise immunity for the given signal. The material considered in this part will also be used extensively later in studying the noise immunity of telephonic communication with pulse modulation.

# 6-2. Determination of the probability of the transmitted parameter

Let the transmitted parameter  $\lambda$  be a dimensionless quantity which can take on any value from -1 to +1 with the same probability. Clearly, if these conditions are not satisfied, then they can be satisfied by introducing a new parameter and suitably modifying the calculation. We assume that when the parameter which is to be transmitted lies in the range  $(k/m) < \lambda < (k+1)/m$ , where k = -m, -m+1, ..., 0, ..., m-1, we send instead the parameter  $\lambda_{\mathbf{k}} = (k/m)$ . In transmission of this typo we give a roots which do not exceed 1/m, which is entirely permissible if m is chosen large enough. Obviously, under these conditions, the signal can have the 2m discrete values

$$A(\lambda_k,t) = A_k(t)$$

and we can apply to it the considerations of Chapter 3. Thus, if we assume that the received waveform is X(t), then, according to Eqs. (3-10) and (3-7), the probability that the transmitted parameter has the value  $\lambda_{k}^{\bullet}$  which means that the transmitted signal

that the transmitted parameter was 
$$A_{\mathbf{k}}(t)$$
, is equal to the quantity 
$$\exp\left[-\frac{T}{\sigma^{2}}\frac{(\mathbf{x}(t)-\mathbf{A}(\lambda_{\mathbf{k}},t))^{2}}{\sigma^{2}}\right]$$

$$P_{\mathbf{x}}(A_{\mathbf{k}}) = \frac{\mathbf{x}-1}{2} \exp\left[-\frac{T}{\sigma^{2}}\frac{(\mathbf{x}(t)-\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{x}/\mathbf{x},t))^{2}}{\sigma^{2}}\right]$$

as follows from the conditions

conditions
$$P(A_{\underline{m}}) = \cdots = P(A_{\underline{0}}) = P(A_{\underline{1}}) = \cdots = P(A_{\underline{m-1}})$$

which are satisfied by the signals under consideration. It follows from this that the probability that whon X(t) is received, the transmitted parameter A lies in the range

 $\lambda^{1} \leq \lambda \leq \lambda^{1}$ 

where  $\lambda' = k'/m$  and  $\lambda'' = k''/m$ , is equal to

$$P_{\mathbf{x}}(\lambda^{1} < \lambda < \lambda^{11}) = \frac{\sum_{k=k^{1}}^{k^{1}} \exp \left[-\frac{T(X(t)-h(k/m),t))^{2}}{\sigma^{2}}\right]}{\sum_{k=-m}^{m-1} \exp \left[-\frac{T(X(t)-h(k/m,t))^{2}}{\sigma^{2}}\right]}$$

Now if we multiply the numerator and denominator of this fraction by  $\Delta\lambda = 1/m$ , and let 1/m approach zero, the sums approach integrals, and we obtain

(6-4) 
$$P_{\mathbf{X}}(\lambda^{1} < \lambda < \lambda^{1}) = \frac{\lambda^{1}}{1} \exp \left[ -\frac{\overline{\mathbf{T}(\mathbf{X}(\mathbf{t}) - \mathbf{A}(\lambda_{1}, \mathbf{t}))^{2}}}{\sigma^{2}} \right] d\lambda$$

Setting  $\lambda^{11} = \lambda^{1} + d\lambda_{0}$  we arrive at the expression

Setting 
$$\lambda^{(1)} = \lambda^{(1)} + d\lambda$$
, we arrive at the expression
$$\exp\left[-\frac{T(X(t)-A(\lambda,t))^2}{\sigma^2}\right] d\lambda$$

$$= F_X(\lambda^{(1)} < \lambda < \lambda^{(1)} + d\lambda) = \frac{1}{\int_{-1}^{\infty} \exp\left[-\frac{T(X(t)-A(\lambda,t))^2}{\sigma^2}\right] d\lambda}$$

or
$$F_{\mathbf{x}}(\lambda^{\prime}) = F_{\mathbf{x}} \exp \left[ -\frac{T(\overline{\mathbf{x}(\mathbf{t})} - \Lambda(\lambda^{\prime}, \mathbf{t}))^{2}}{\sigma^{2}} \right]$$

where  $K_{\mathbf{x}}$  is a constant which depends on X(t) but not on  $\lambda$  and  $t_{\bullet}$ 

It follows from what has been said that if we divide all the values of the transmitted parameter into intervals of the same length da, then to the received waveform X(t) there corresponds most often the value of the transmitted parameter  $\lambda$  which lies in the interval

$$\lambda_{xm} < \lambda < \lambda_{xm} + d\lambda$$

where  $\lambda_{xm}$  is the value of the parameter  $\lambda^i$  for which the function  $P_{x}(\lambda^i)$  is a maximum. We shall call  $\lambda_{xm}$  the most probable value of the transmitted parameter  $\lambda_{\bullet}$  It is clear from Eq. (6-6) that the quantity  $\overline{(X(t) - A(\lambda,t))^2}$ 

$$(6-7) \qquad \overline{(X(t) - A(\lambda, t))^2}$$

has its minimum value for  $\lambda = \lambda_{xm}$ . If this function and its derivative with respect to  $\lambda$  are continuous in  $\lambda_s$  then clearly  $\lambda_{_{\mbox{\scriptsize MM}}}$  must satisfy the equation

(6-6) 
$$\left\{\frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} \overline{(X(t)-\lambda(\lambda_0 t))^2}\right\}_{\lambda=\lambda_{XM}} = -2 \overline{(X(t)-\lambda(\lambda_{XM} t))} \lambda_{\lambda}^{*}(\lambda_{XM} t) = 0,$$

where we have written

(6-9) 
$$A_{\lambda}^{t}(\lambda_{xm},t) = \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} \Lambda(\lambda,t) \right\}_{\lambda = \lambda_{xm}}$$

The receiver which, depending on the received waveform X(t), always reproduces  $\lambda_{xm}$ , the most probable value of the parameter, i.e., the value which minimizes the expression (6-7), will be called the ideal receiver.

# 6-3. The function Px() near the most probable value Axn

We now find the quantity  $P_{\chi}(\lambda)$  (introduced in Section 6-2) near its maximum, i.e., near the most probable value  $\lambda = \lambda_{XXM}^{\bullet}$ . The general form of this function is given by Eq. (f-6). If we assume that  $\lambda$  is near  $\lambda_{xm}$ , we can write

(6-10) 
$$A(\lambda,t) = \Lambda(\lambda_{xm},t) + A_{\lambda}'(\lambda_{xm},t)(\lambda - \lambda_{xm})$$

Substituting this expression into Eq. (6-6) and taking into account the relation (6-8),

we obtain
$$(6-11) P_{\mathbf{x}}(\lambda) = K_{\mathbf{x}} exp \left[ \frac{-T(X(\mathbf{t}) - h(\lambda_{\mathbf{xm}}, \mathbf{t}))^2 - TA_{\lambda}^{1/2}(\lambda_{\mathbf{xm}}, \mathbf{t})(\lambda - \lambda_{\mathbf{xm}})^2}{\sigma^2} \right]$$

$$= K_{x}^{t} \exp \left[ -\frac{T A_{\lambda}^{t^{2}} (\lambda_{xm}, t)}{\sigma^{2}} (\lambda - \lambda_{xm})^{2} \right] \quad \bullet$$

where  $\Gamma_{\mathbf{X}}^{\mathbf{I}}$  is a constant which does not depend on  $\lambda$ . Thus, the function  $P_{\mathbf{X}}(\lambda)$  obeys a Gaussian curve in the region where Eq. (6-10) can be considered valid. If the noise intensity  $\sigma$  is sufficiently small, the exponent in Eqs. (6-6) and (6-11) becomes so large in absolute value outside the region of validity of Eq. (6-10) that  $P_{\chi}(\lambda)$  can be neglected outside of this region. In this case, we can regard the probability function  $P_{\chi}(\lambda)$  as being given by a Gaussian curve everywhere, and the constant  $K_{\chi}^{t}$  can be easily calculated from the condition  $+\infty \\
(G-12) \qquad \qquad \int P(\lambda)d\lambda = 1$ 

(6-12) 
$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} P(\lambda) d\lambda = 1.$$

Substituting into this equation the value of  $P_{\chi}(\lambda)$  from Eq. (6-11) and integrating, we

find
$$K_{X}^{i} = \frac{\sqrt{T h_{\lambda}^{i/2}(\lambda_{XD}, t)}}{\sqrt{\pi} \sigma}$$

Therefore, for sufficiently small noise intensity, we can assume that

Therefore, for sufficiently 
$$P_{x}(\lambda) = \frac{\sqrt{\frac{1}{TA_{\lambda}^{2}(\lambda_{ym}, t)}}}{\sqrt{\pi} \sigma} \exp \left[-\frac{TA_{\lambda}^{2}(\lambda_{ym}, t)}{\sigma^{2}} - (\lambda - \lambda_{xm})^{2}\right]$$

It should be mentioned that in this case  $P_{\mathbf{x}}(\lambda)$  depends on the received waveform  $\mathbf{X}(\mathbf{t})$ only to the extent that the quantity  $\lambda_{\chi_{22}}$  depends on X(t).

In these calculations, we assumed for simplicity that Eq. (6-11) is valid for all values of  $\lambda$  lying between  $-\infty$  and  $+\infty$ . However, this will not always be true, oven for small  $\sigma_0$ . In fact,  $P_{\chi}(\lambda)$  must always vanish for  $\lambda < -1$  and  $\lambda > +1$ , which means that Eqs. (6-13) and (6-14) can give a big error when  $\lambda_{DM}$  is noartl. Therefore, the results obtained in this section and in subsequent sections based on this one, require amplification in the case where  $\lambda_{xx}$  is near  $\pm 1$ .

# C-4. Error and optimum noise immunity in the presence of low intensity noise

Suppose that when the waveform X(t) arrives, the receiver, which is not necessarily ideal, reproduces a parameter  $\lambda_{\mathbf{x}}$ , which is a function of the waveform. We now determine the resulting mean square error. As already remarked in Section 6-2,  $P_{\mathbf{x}}(\lambda)d\lambda$  is the probability that if X(t) is received, the transmitted parameter lies in the interval  $\lambda,\lambda+d\lambda$ . This is also the probability that the value of the parameter reproduced by the receiver has an error lying in the interval  $\lambda-\lambda_{X}$ ,  $\lambda+d\lambda-\lambda_{X}$ . Therefore, in this case, the mean square error  $\delta_{\underline{m}}$  is given by the expression

$$\delta_{m}^{2} = \int_{-1}^{+1} (\lambda - \lambda_{x})^{2} P_{x}(\lambda) d\lambda = \int_{-1}^{+1} \lambda^{2} P_{x}(\lambda) d\lambda - 2\lambda_{x} \int_{-1}^{+1} \lambda P_{x}(\lambda) d\lambda + \lambda_{x}^{2}$$

since

$$\int_{-1}^{+1} P_{\chi}(\lambda) d\lambda = 1.$$

As is evident from this fermula,  $\delta_m^2$  varies with the choice of  $\lambda_k$  in accordance with a

parabolic law, and has a minimum for some value  $\lambda = \lambda_{XO}^2$ . Differentiating  $\delta_{XO}^2$  with respect to  $\lambda_{XO}^2$ , and setting this derivative equal to zero, we obtain an equation for  $\lambda_{XO}^2$  of the form

$$\frac{\left(d\left(\delta_{m}^{2}\right)/d\lambda_{x}\right)_{\lambda_{x}=\lambda_{xo}} = -2\int_{-1}^{+1} \lambda P_{x}(\lambda)d\lambda + 2\lambda_{xo} = 0 ,$$

$$\lambda_{xo} = \int_{-1}^{+1} \lambda P_{x}(\lambda)d\lambda ,$$

or, what amounts to the same thing,  $\lambda_{XO}$  is the aboissa of the center of mass of the area under the curve  $P_X(\lambda)$ . We shall call  $\lambda_{XO}$  the optimum value of the parameter  $\lambda$ .

If the waveform X(t) is received, then the minimum value of the mean square error, which is obtained if the receiver reproduces the value  $\lambda_{XO}$ , is given by the expression

(6-16) 
$$\delta_{mn}^2 = \int_{-1}^{+1} (\lambda - \lambda_{xo})^2 P_x(\lambda) d\lambda \quad .$$

It should be remarked that in the case where  $P_{\chi}(\lambda)$  is a symmetric curve with a single maximum, then the abcissa of the center of mass of the curve obviously coincides with the abcissa of the maximum, which means that in this case

$$\lambda_{xo} = \lambda_{xm} \quad .$$

whomos

(6-15)

Thus, according to the result of the preceding section, we can assert that when the noise is sufficiently weak, in which case  $P_{\chi}(\lambda)$  obeys a Gaussian distribution (which is symmetric), then  $\lambda_{\chi_0}$  and  $\lambda_{\chi_m}$  are equal, and the ideal receiver gives the least mean square error. Using Eqs. (6-16) and (6-14), we can find that this error is

(6-18) 
$$\delta_{nm}^2 = \frac{\sigma^2}{2T \Lambda_{\lambda}^{*2}(\lambda_{nm},t)}$$

This is the least possible error for sufficiently small  $\sigma$ . It is obtained with the ideal receiver and obviously determines the optimum noise immunity in the presence of weak noise. Here, and in what follows, we understand weak noise to be noise that has an intensity low enough to make the considerations of Section 6-3 valid. As is evident from Eq. (6-18), the optimum noise immunity for transmission of a parameter is proportional to the specific energy of the waveform  $\Lambda^1_{\lambda}(\lambda_{\chi_{11}},t)$ , i.e., of the derivative of the signal with respect to

the transmitted parameter.

Using Eq. (6-16), we can also determine the mean square error for large noise intensities. However, it is difficult to use this error to evaluate the optimum noise immunity. The point is that for large  $\sigma$ , the character of the function  $P_X(\lambda)$  begins to depend on the received signal X(t), and therefore the quantity  $\delta_{\text{LER}}$  given by Eq. (6-16) also depends on X(t). In this case, in order to evaluate the noise immunity, we must also evaluate the probability of the various values of X(t), which leads to a series of mathematical difficulties. In Chapter 8 we shall return to the problem of the evaluation of the optimum noise immunity when the noise intensity is large.

We now find the probability that, in the presence of weak noise, the ideal receiver reproduces the value of the transmitted parameter with an error exceeding  $\varepsilon$  in absolute value. Obviously, this probability is equal to

$$P(|\delta| > \varepsilon) = \int_{-1}^{\lambda_{xm}-\varepsilon} P_{x}(\lambda)d\lambda + \int_{\lambda_{xm}+\varepsilon}^{+1} P_{x}(\lambda)d\lambda \quad .$$

Using Eq. (6-14), and keeping in mind the notation used in Eq. (2-47), we obtain

(6-19) 
$$P(|\delta| > \varepsilon) = 2V \left[ \frac{\sqrt{2TA_{\lambda}^{1/2}(\lambda_{xm} + t)}}{\sigma} \right] = 2V(\varepsilon/\delta_{max}).$$

6-5. Second method of determining the error and optimum noise immunity in the presence of low intensity noise

There is a second method of finding the size of the error for the case of transmission of a parameter in the presence of low intensity noise. Although this method gives a result which coincides with that already obtained, we shall examine it anyway, since this method is interesting in its own right, and since we shall use it later, albeit in a more complicated form. As before, let the signal  $A(\lambda,t)$  represent some transmitted parameter  $\lambda$ . The noise  $W_{\mu,\gamma}(t)$  may or may not be added to the signal, with the result that a waveform X(t) acts upon the receiver; this waveform is  $A(\lambda,t)$  if there is no noise, and  $A(\lambda,t) + W_{\mu,\gamma}(t)$  in the presence of noise. We represent the waveform by

(6-20) 
$$X(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{n} x_k c_k(t) ,$$

where the  $C_{\mathbf{k}}(t)$  are given orthonormal functions. Then X(t) is completely characterized by the values  $x_1,\dots,x_n$ . Depending on the received waveform X(t), the receiver reproduces some value of the parameter  $\lambda_0$  a value which may or may not coincide with the transmitted value. We assume that to each waveform X(t) acting upon the receiver corresponds a specified value of the parameter, which is reproduced by the receivor. Clearly, for every receiver the reproduced parameter equals some function

$$\lambda = F(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$$
(6-21)

which characterizes its operation.

Suppose the received waveform receives an increment

(6-22) 
$$dx(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{n} dx_{k} c_{k}(t) .$$

Obviously, in this case the parameter value reproduced by the receiver also receives an increment, equal to

increment, equal to
$$d\lambda = \sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_k} dx_k = \overline{L(t)} dX(t)$$
(6-23)

where we have designated

where we have designated
$$L(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_k} C_k(t) ,$$

as follows from (2-22). Suppose that the transmitted parameter is changed by dl and suppose that no noise is added to the signal; then the waveform arriving at the receiver changes by an amount

changes by an example 
$$dx(t) = \Lambda_{\lambda}^{*}(\lambda, t)d\lambda$$
 (6-25)

where

where
$$A_{\lambda}^{i}(\lambda,t) = \frac{\partial A(\lambda,t)}{\partial \lambda} \quad .$$

We assume that in the case where no noise is added to the signal, the receiver reproduces the transmitted parameter without error. Therefore, in this case the signal that is reproduced must also change by an amount da. According to Eq. (6-23), we obtain

$$d\lambda = L(t)A_{\lambda}^{\dagger}(\lambda,t) d\lambda$$
.

Thus, for a receiver which reproduces the transmitted parameter without error in the

71

absence of noise, the relation

(6-27) 
$$\overline{L(t)A_{\lambda}^{\dagger}(\lambda,t)} = 1$$

Now suppose that sufficiently weak noise  $W_{\mu,\nu}(t)$  is added to the transmitted signal. must be valid. Then, due to the action of the noise the received waveform receives an increment

$$dX(t) = \Psi_{\mu,\nu}(t)$$
 ,

so that, according to Eq. (6-23), the parameter which is reproduced receives an increment

so that, according to Eq. (6-23), the parameter 
$$\int \frac{1}{L^2(t)} dt$$
 (6-28) 
$$\delta = d\lambda = L(t)W_{\mu,\nu}(t) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{2T}} \int \frac{1}{L^2(t)} dt$$

The last equality follows from Eq. (2-60). Thus, when the receiver reproduces the parameter value, the error obtained as a result of the addition of noise is a random variable which obeys a Gauss law. As follows from Eq. (2-50), the mean square error is given by

the quantity 
$$\delta_{\underline{m}}^2 = \overline{L^2(t)} - \frac{\sigma^2}{2T}.$$

We now find what kind of receiver is needed to make the mean square error a minimum. Clearly, to do this we need to choose the receiver so as to make the quantity  $L^2(t)$  a minimum, while satisfying the constraint (6-27). It is apparent that any function L(t) can always be represented as a sum of two terms

can always be represent
$$L(t) = L_1(t) + L_2(t) \qquad (6-30)$$

where the first term "coincides in direction" with the function  $A_{\lambda}^{\dagger}(\lambda,t)$ , i.e.

where the first term 
$$L_1(t) = \rho A_{\lambda}^{\prime}(\lambda, t)$$
, (6-31)

where p is some constant, and the second term is orthogonal to this function, i.e.

where 
$$\rho$$
 is some constant, and the  $\frac{L_2(t)A_{\lambda}^{\dagger}(\lambda,t)}{L_2(t)A_{\lambda}^{\dagger}(\lambda,t)} = (1/\rho) \frac{L_2(t)L_1(t)}{L_2(t)L_1(t)} = 0$ .

Then
$$\overline{L(t)A_{\lambda}'(\lambda,t)} = \overline{L_{1}(t)A_{\lambda}'(\lambda,t)} = P \overline{A_{\lambda}^{12}(\lambda,t)}$$
(6-33)

which according to the condition (6-27) gives

which according to one 
$$0 = 1/\overline{\Lambda^{12}(\lambda, t)}$$
(6-34)

72

whence

(6-35) 
$$L_{\gamma}(t) = A_{\gamma}^{\dagger}(\lambda, t) / \overline{A_{\lambda}^{\dagger 2}(\lambda, t)}$$

As far as L<sub>2</sub>(t) is concerned, it does not enter into the condition (6-27), and can take on any value. Moreover

$$\overline{L^2(t)} = \overline{L_1^2(t)} + \overline{L_2^2(t)}$$

since

$$\overline{L_1(t)L_2(t)} = 0 .$$

It follows from this formula that, under the constraint (6-27),  $L^2(t)$  has its minimum value for  $L_2(t) = 0$ . Thus we obtain the minimum value of the error if

(6-36) 
$$L(t) = \Lambda_{\lambda}^{\dagger}(\lambda_{0}t) / \overline{\Lambda_{\lambda}^{\dagger}(\lambda_{0}t)}$$

so that, according to Eq. (6-28), this minimum error 5 equals

$$\delta_{m} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{2TA_{\lambda}^{12}(\lambda_{s}t)}} \quad \Theta$$

from which we obtain for the minimum value of the mean square error the expression

(6-58) 
$$E \delta_{m}^{2} = \delta_{mmn}^{2} = \frac{\sigma^{2}}{2T A_{\lambda}^{1/2}(\lambda, t)}$$

which coincides with the formula (6-18) previously obtained for this quantity.

#### 6-6. Summary of Chapter 6

The basic results obtained in Chapter 6 can be formulated as follows. Suppose the parameter  $\lambda$  is transmitted using the signal  $A(\lambda,t)$ , which is a continuous function of  $\lambda$ ; then the smallest mean square error produced by the addition of low intensity noise to the signal is obtained for the ideal receiver, which, when a waveform X(t) is received, reproduces the value of the parameter  $\lambda$  for which the quantity

$$(6-39) \qquad \qquad (X(t)-A(\lambda,t))^2$$

has its minimum value. Moreover, when the parameter is reproduced, the probability of getting some value or other of the error obeys a Gauss law, and  $\delta_{mm}^2$ , the mean square value of the error is

(6-40) 
$$\delta_{mm}^2 = \sigma^2 / 2T \overline{A_{\lambda}^{12}(\lambda, t)} ,$$

Declassified in Part - Sanitized Copy Approved for Release @ 50-Yr 2013/10/28 : CIA-RDP81-01043R002500140005-0

73

where

(6-41) 
$$A_{\lambda}^{*}(\lambda,t) = \frac{\partial A(\lambda,t)}{\partial \lambda}$$

This error is the least possible, and characterizes the optimum noise immunity for the signal  $A(\lambda,t)$  in the presence of low intensity noise. Thus, under these conditions, the optimum noise immunity is completely determined by the specific energy T  $A_{\lambda}^{*2}(\lambda,t)$ , and the larger this energy, the larger the immunity.

# 6-7. Geometric interpretation of the material of chapter 6

As we have already seen, a waveform can be represented by a radius vector, or, what amounts to the same thing, by a point of a multi-dimensional space. The discrete signals which we considered in the second part of this book could be represented by discrete points. The signals which we considered in this chapter can take on a continuous sequence of values, just like the parameter which they characterize. Therefore, the points which characterize the signal lie on a curve. We shall call this curve the signal curve. If a noise waveform is added to the signal waveform, then the resulting waveform is characterized by a new point which most of the time does not fall on the signal curve.

As we have seen, if the waveform X(t) is received, the most probable value of the parameter is the one for which the expression (6-7) is a minimum, i.e., the value corresponding to the point of the signal curve which is nearest to X(t). This is natural, since the shortest noise vectors are the most probable, which means that it is most likely that X(t) was formed by the addition of a noise vector to the nearest point of the signal curve. We saw that the larger the quantity  $\frac{1}{\Lambda_{\lambda}^{12}(\lambda,t)}$ , the smaller the errors produced by the addition of noise. The quantity  $\frac{1}{\Lambda_{\lambda}^{12}(\lambda,t)}$  d $\lambda$  characterizes the length of the element of are described by the signal point on the signal curve, when the transmitted parameter is increased by d $\lambda$ . It is entirely natural that the larger this element of are, the smaller the probability that such a displacement is produced by the action of noise. Thus, to increase the optimum noise immunity in the presence of weak noise, one should choose a communication system in which the longest possible signal curve is obtained when the parameter is changed from -1 to +1.

#### CHAPTER 7

THE OPTIMUM NOISE IMMUNITY OF VARIOUS SYSTEMS FOR TRANSMITTING SEPARATE PARAMETER VALUES

IN THE PRESENCE OF LOW INTENSITY NOISE

### 7-1. Amplitude modulation

In this chapter we shall consider the noise immunity of some systems which are used to transmit separate parameter values in the presence of weak noise in the sense of Section 6-3. First we shall investigate some modulation systems separately, and then we shall compare them. We consider first the case of amplitude modulation, where the signal can be written as

(7-1) 
$$A(\lambda,t) = (1+\lambda) B(t) ,$$

where B(t) is some waveform or other, and  $\lambda$  is a constant for a given signal and characterizes the value of the transmitted parameter. For this signal we have

$$A_{\lambda}^{\prime}(\lambda,t) = B(t)$$
,

so that the minimum mean square error which characterizes the optimum noise immumity is given by the expression

(7-2) 
$$\delta_{\text{min}}^2 = \frac{\sigma^2}{2T \text{ B}^2(t)}$$

where

(7-3) 
$$4T \overline{B^2(t)} = T \overline{A^2(1,t)} = Q_M^2.$$

The quantity  $Q_{\underline{\mathbf{M}}}^{\mathbf{Z}}$  is the maximum specific energy of the signal.

Thus, in the case of amolitude modulation, the minimum mean square error which characterizes the optimum noise immunity is determined only by the signal energy and does not depend on the form of the signal. This result becomes quite apparent if we use the geometric interpretation of the type of modulation in question. In fact, for amplitude modulation, the signal curve is a straight line segment, one end of which is at the origin of coordinates. The longer this line, the greater the noise immunity, but at the same time the greater the length of the maximum radius vector of points on the line, and therefore the greater the signal energy corresponding to this radius vector. It is interesting to note that for amplitude modulation, any noise can be regarded as weak in the sense of Section 6-3, since in this case Eq. (6-10) is valid for all \(\lambda\). In this case,

inaccuracy in the calculation of the mean square error comes about only because of the boundary offect montioned at the end of Section 6-3.

## 7-2. Linear modulation

The amplitude modulation just discussed is a special case of linear modulation, for which the signal is defined by the expression

$$A(\lambda,t) = \lambda B(t) + B_0(t) .$$

where B(t) and  $B_{o}(t)$  are any waveforms. It is easy to see that in this case the minimum mean square error is also given by Eq. (7-2). However, with this modulation, it is possible to decrease the maximum specific energy of the signal, without changing the optimum noise immunity. For linear modulation, the signal curve is also a straight line segment, the length of which equals  $2\sqrt{B^2(t)}$ . By properly choosing  $B_0(t)$ , we may be able to shift the signal curve in such a way as to shorten the maximum radius vectors of the straight line segment, while keeping its length (and therefore the noise immunity) fixed. As is easily surmised, to do this we must take  $B_0(t) = 0$ . Then the midpoint of our straight line sogment will fall at the origin of coordinates, and the maximum specific energy of the signal will have the smallest possible value

(7-5) 
$$Q_{\rm M}^2 = T \overline{B^2(t)}$$

so that the minimum mean square error will be expressed in terms of  $q_{\rm M}^2$  as

so that the manner 
$$\delta^2 = \sigma^2 / 2Q_{11}^2$$
 (7-6)

Thus, in this case, we obtain a fourfold gain in power as compared with amplitude modulation. Howover, the realization of this systementails technical difficulties, since in this case, the receiver must respond to the phase of the signal, which changes when  $\lambda$ passes through zero. For the linear system of modulation, just as for emplitude modulation, any noise can be regarded as sufficiently weak.

The application of non-linear modulation, for which the signal curve is not a straight line, allows one to significantly increase the noise immunity for weak noise without increasing the signal energy. The reason for this is that in this case the signal curve can be greatly lengthened by making it twisted, without thereby increasing the maximum distance between the points of the curve and the origin of coordinates, i.e., without

increasing the maximum energy of the signal.

# 7-3. General case of pulse time modulation

We begin our investigation of non-linear modulation systems with the pulse time system. In this system, depending on the value of the transmitted quantity, the envelope of a high-frequency pulse can be shifted in time without changing its shape. For such modulation, the equation of the signal can in general be written as

(7-7) 
$$A(\lambda,t) = U_{\underline{a}}(t - \frac{\tau_0 \lambda}{2}) \cos(\omega_0 t + \beta) \quad .$$

The quantity  $au_0^{}$  appearing here characterizes the maximum displacement of the pulse when  $\lambda$  changes from -1 to +1. The receiver used with this modulation must somehow respond to the time shift of the received pulse. Usually with such a communication system, another signal is transmitted in order to establish a time origin at the receiver. Forever, we shall not be concerned here with these details, and shall assume that the time origin is known at the receiver.

We now find the mean square error when low intensity noise is added to the signal, and when the reception is with an ideal receiver. For this purpose we use Eq. (6-38).

For our signal we have

$$A_{\lambda}^{I}(\lambda,t) = \frac{\partial U_{m}(t - \frac{\tau_{o}^{\lambda}}{2})}{\partial \lambda} \cos(\omega_{o}^{t} + \beta) = -\frac{\partial U_{m}(t - \frac{\tau_{o}^{\lambda}}{2})}{\partial t} \frac{\tau_{o}}{2} \cos(\omega_{o}^{t} + \beta),$$

$$\frac{A_{\lambda}^{I2}(\lambda,t)}{A_{\lambda}^{I2}(\lambda,t)} = \frac{\tau_{o}^{2}}{4} \left[ \frac{\partial U_{m}(t - \frac{\tau_{o}^{\lambda}}{2})}{\partial t} \right]^{2} \cos^{2}(\omega_{o}^{t} + \beta).$$

whence

We shall assume that the square of the term in rectangular brackets which appears in this term does not contain the frequency  $2\omega$ , which is almost always the case, since the envelope  $U_m(t)$  does not usually contain high-frequency components. Then, applying Eq. (2-26), we obtain

$$\frac{1}{A_{\lambda}^{2}(\lambda,t)} = \frac{\tau_{0}^{2}}{8} \left[ \frac{\partial U_{m}(t)}{\partial t} \right]^{2} .$$

since

$$\left[ \frac{\partial U_{m}(t - \frac{\tau_{o}\lambda}{2^{\cdot}})}{\partial t} \right]^{2} = \left[ \frac{\partial U_{m}(t)}{\partial t} \right]^{2}$$

and

$$\frac{1}{\cos^2(\omega_0 t + \beta)} = \frac{1}{2} \quad \bullet$$

It follows that whon the ideal receiver is used, the value of the mean square error is given by the expression

$$\delta_{\text{pres}}^2 = \frac{4\sigma^2}{\tau_{\text{o}}^2 \sqrt{\frac{\partial U_{\text{m}}(t)}{\partial t}^2}}$$

As is evident from this formula, the error becomes smaller when  $au_0$  or the specific energy of the waveform  $\partial U_{\underline{m}}(t)/\partial t$  is increased; the latter equals

$$T = \frac{\left[\frac{\partial U_{m}(t)}{\partial t}\right]^{2}}{\left[\frac{\partial U_{m}(t)}{\partial t}\right]^{2}} = \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \left[\frac{\partial U_{m}(t)}{\partial t}\right]^{2} dt .$$

The error does not depend on the other signal parameters.

7-4. Special case of pulse time modulation (optimum noise immunity)

To obtain concrete results, we consider a special case of pulse time modulation.

let the transmitted signal be

Iet the transmitted signal be
$$\sin \int_{\mathbb{R}} (t - \frac{\tau_0 \lambda}{2}) \cos \omega_0 t = U_0 \frac{\sin \int_{\mathbb{R}} (t - \frac{\tau_0 \lambda}{2})}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} (t - \frac{\tau_0 \lambda}{2})}, \cos \omega_0 t \quad .$$

The envelope of this signal is represented by curve 1 in Figure 7-1. It has its maximum value at t =  $(\tau_0 \lambda)/2$ . The spectrum of the signal lies entirely in the band from (ω,-1)/2π to (ω,+1)/2π.

We now find the minimum mean square error for this case. We have

$$T \left[ \frac{\partial U_{m}(t)}{\partial t} \right]^{2} = U_{o}^{2} \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left( \frac{\sin i \Omega t}{i \Omega t} \right) \right]^{2} dt = U_{o}^{2} \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \left[ \frac{\Omega^{2} t \cos \Omega t - i \Omega \sin \Omega t}{i \Omega^{2} t^{2}} \right]^{2} dt.$$

Letting the limits of integration go to ± 00, which can obviously be done, since T can be arbitrarily large, we obtain

(7-10) 
$$T\left[\frac{\partial U_{m}(t)}{\partial t}\right]^{2} = \frac{\pi}{3} \Lambda U_{0}^{2}$$



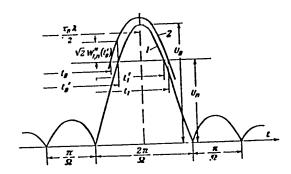


Fig. 7-1. Curve 1 — envelope of the pulse; curve 2 — the same with added noise.

whence it follows by Eq. (7-8) that the minimum mean square error equals

(7-11) 
$$\delta_{mm}^2 = \frac{12 \sigma^2}{\pi \tau_0^2 d \Omega_0^2}$$

For ease of comparison with other systems, we shall express  $v_0^2$  in terms of the specific signal energy Q. According to Appendix A, the specific energy equals

$$Q^2 = T \overline{\Lambda^2(\lambda,t)} = \frac{1}{2} T \overline{U_m^2(t)}$$

Thus

Thus
$$Q^{2} = \frac{U_{o}^{2} + T/2}{2} \frac{\sin^{2}t L_{t}}{t^{2} + T/2} dt = \frac{\pi}{2 t} U_{o}^{2} .$$

In this integration, to simplify the result we replaced the limits of integration by  $\pm \infty$ . Introducing this value in Eq. (7-11), we obtain

$$\delta_{EDA}^2 = \frac{6\sigma^2}{\tau_0^2 \Omega^2 Q^2} \quad .$$

In this modulation system, all the points of the signal curve have the same distance  $\sqrt{\frac{2}{\Lambda^2(\lambda,t)}}$  from the origin of coordinates. Hence the curve lies on some hypersphere. As is evident from Eq. (7-13), the noise immunity and therefore the length of the signal curve increase when  $\tau_o$  and  $\Omega$  are increased, while holding constant the specific energy, and consequently the radius of the hypersphere.

7-5. Special case of pulse tire modulation (noise immunity for the first method of detection)

As is apparent from Eqs. (7-2), (7-6) and (7-13), the pulse time method of modulation discussed in the preceding section can provide great optimum noise immunity as compared with amplitude and linear modulation. However, for practical purposes, it is important to know how easy it is to realize this large optimum noise immunity. To clarify this question, we examine two concrete methods of receiving the signals considered in the preceding section.

We assume that the receiving apparatus notes the instant of time to when the amplitude of the received signal assumes a certain value  $\mathbf{U}_{\mathbf{n}}$ , e.g., suppose that at this instant a gas discharge tube flashes and that this is recorded on a moving light-sensitive film.

Due to the action of noise at the receiver, this instant will be changed and cause an error, which we now find. We assume that there is an ideal filter in the receiver, which passes a band of frequencies from  $(\omega_0 - iL)/2\pi$  to  $(\omega_0 + iL)/2\pi$ , i.e., the pass band which contains the components of our signal. Then, obviously, we can consider only the components of the noise which lie in this band. The sum of these components is the process  $\Psi_{\mu,\nu}(t)$ , given by Eq. (B-6) of Appendix B. Thus, the amplitude of the sum of the signal and noise waveforms can be expressed as

and noise wavelorms can be 
$$V_{1,n}(t) + \sqrt{2} |V_{1,n}(t)|^2 + 2 |V_{1,n}(t)|^2$$
(7-14)
$$V_{\Sigma} = \sqrt{|V_{m}(t)|^2 + 2|V_{1,n}(t)|^2 + 2|V_{1,n}(t)|^2}$$

If, because of the low intensity of the noise, we take  $U_m^2(t)$   $\rangle$   $V_{1,n}^{(2)}$ , then we can neglect Win(t) and write

$$U_{1,n}^{(t)} = U_{n}^{(t)} + \sqrt{2} W_{1,n}^{(t)}$$
 (7-15)

Let us see how much the action of the noise shifts the instant of time recorded by the receiver, i.e., the instant t when the value of the amplitude of the received waveform assumes the value  $U_n^*$ . In Figure 7-1, curve 1 represents the dependence of  $U_m^*$  on t, and curve 2 the dependence of the sum amplitude U on t. According to Eq. (7-15), the vertical distance between these curves is the quantity  $\sqrt{Z}$   $W_{1,n}^{(1)}(t)$ . It can be seen from the figure how much the time instant t is shifted by the action of the noise. This shift gives an error in the determination of \( \) equal to

$$\delta = \frac{t_0 - t_0}{\tau_0/2}$$

since  $t_0$  is shifted by  $\tau_0/2$  when  $\lambda$  is changed by unity. Here we have denoted by  $t_0'$  the instant of time when the amplitude of the signal takes on the value  $\mathbf{U}_{\mathbf{n}}$ . We assume that the size of the error  $\delta$  is small enough so that for the time  $t_0'-t_0$  the quantity  $W_{1,n}^{\prime\prime}(t)$ can be regarded as constant and the segment of the curve Um(t) can be regarded as rectilinear. Then the ratio between  $\delta$  and  $W_{1,n}^{\prime\prime}(t_0^\prime)$  can be found from the figure, and is

clearly
$$\left[\frac{\partial U_{m}(t)}{\partial t}\right]_{t=t_{0}'} = \frac{\sqrt{2}W_{1,n}'(t_{0}')}{t_{0}'-t_{0}}$$

In view of Appendices B and C, we obtain from this

(7-18) 
$$\delta = \frac{2(t'-t_0)}{\tau_0} = \frac{2\sqrt{\mu^2/\pi} \sigma \theta}{\tau_0 \left[\frac{\partial U_m(t)}{\partial t}\right]_{t=t'_0}}$$

where  $\Theta$  is a normal random variable. As we see from this formula, as in the case of the ideal receiver, the error  $\delta$  obeys a Gaussian law. The mean square error equals

(7-19) 
$$E \delta^{2} = \delta_{m}^{2} = \frac{4 \operatorname{Lo}^{2}}{\pi \tau_{0}^{2} \left[\frac{\partial U_{m}(t)}{\partial t}\right]_{t=t_{0}^{1}}^{2} }$$

From Eq. (7-9), we obtain

(7-20) 
$$\left[\frac{\partial U_{m}(t)}{\partial t}\right]_{t=t'} = U_{0} \Omega \frac{x \cos x - \sin x}{x^{2}} .$$

where

(7-22)

$$x = \Omega(t_0' - \frac{\tau_0 \lambda}{2}) \qquad \bullet$$

Giving x various values, we can use Eqs. (7-19) and (7-20) to determine the quantity  $\delta_{\rm m}^2$  . which can be written as

which can be written as
$$\delta_{m}^{2} = \frac{12\sigma^{2}}{\pi \eta_{1} \tau_{0}^{2} I U_{0}^{2}} = \frac{6\sigma^{2}}{\eta_{1} \tau_{0}^{2} \sqrt{2}Q^{2}}$$

where  $\eta_1$  is a function of x, and  $Q^2$  is defined by Eq. (7-12). Using the formula  $U_n = V_0 \frac{\sin x}{x}$ 

we can find the dependence of x on  $U_n/U_o$ , and consequently the dependence of  $\eta_1$  on  $U_n/U_o$ , which is given by the appropriate curve in Figure 7-2. Comparing Eqs. (7-13) and (7-21), we see that since  $\eta_1$  is always less than one, the noise immunity for the method of reception discussed in this section is less than the optimum noise immunity; moreover, 71 is the efficiency coefficient (introduced in Section 4-2) which shows how much the signal energy (strongth) can be reduced with the ideal receiver, while obtaining the same noise immunity, i.e., the same  $\delta_{m}^{2}$ , as with the given means of reception. As can be seen from Figure 7-2,  $\eta_1$  has its maximum value of 0.58 at  $U_n/U_0 = 0.41$ .



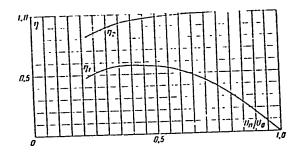


Fig. 7-2. Efficiency coefficient for pulse time modulation;  $\eta_1$  - reception with one threshold;  $\eta_2$  - reception with two thresholds;  $U_n$  - threshold amplitude;  $U_o$  - maximum pulse amplitude.

# 7-6. Special case of pulse time modulation (noise immunity for the second method of detection)

We now try to decrease the mean square error as compared with the value we obtained for the first method of detection, described in the preceding section. Such a decrease is possible, since the error obtained was larger than that given by the ideal receiver. To achieve this, we use a receiver which reads not only the instant of time t whon the amplitude of the received waveform crosses the level  $\mathbf{U}_{\mathbf{n}}$  from below, but also the instant  $t_1$  when the received waveform crosses the level  $\mathbf{U}_n$  from above; we take the value of the transmitted parameter to be the mean value

$$\frac{t_0 + t_1}{2}$$

As a result of the addition of noise, we again obtain an error both in the reading of the instant to and in the reading of the instant t1. We denote these errors by 50 and 510 respectively. Clearly, by Eqs. (7-16) and (7-17) we have

(7-24) 
$$\delta_{0} = \frac{2(t_{0}^{'} - t_{0})}{\tau_{0}} = \frac{2\sqrt{2} \, \pi_{1,n}^{'}(t_{0}^{'})}{\tau_{0} \left[\frac{\partial J_{n}(t)}{\partial t}\right]_{t=t_{0}^{'}}},$$

(7-25) 
$$\delta_{1} = \frac{2(t_{1}^{i} - t_{1})}{\tau_{0}} = \frac{2\sqrt{z} \, W_{1,n}^{i,i}(t_{1}^{i})}{\tau_{0} \left[\frac{\partial U_{n}(t)}{\partial t}\right]_{t=t_{1}^{i}}},$$

where  $t_0^*$  is the instant of time when  $U_n(t)$  passes through the value  $U_n$  from below, and  $t_1^i$  is the instant of time when  $u_n(t)$  passes through the value  $u_n$  from above. Since U (t) is a symmetric function, we have

Therefore, the error obtained in reading the mean value eq

We now find the random variable  $W_{1,n}^{''}(t_0')-W_{1,n}^{''}(t_1')$ . Here we cannot use directly the result of Section 2-5, since the random variables  $W_{1,n}^{i,i}(t_0^i)$  and  $W_{1,n}^{i,i}(t_1^i)$  are dependent. According to Eqs. (2-54) and (2-74), we can write

ording to Eqs. (2-54) and (2-74), we can write
$$W_{1,n}^{''}(t_0') - W_{1,n}^{''}(t_1') = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{2T}} \sum_{\ell=1}^{2n} \left[ I_{\ell}(t_0') - I_{\ell}(t_1') \right] \theta_{\ell} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{2T}} \sqrt{\sum_{\ell=1}^{2n} \left[ I_{\ell}(t_0') - I_{\ell}(t_1') \right]^2} \theta_{\ell}$$

Now we take two terms of this sum and consider Eq. (2-14). We obtain

To terms of this sum and consider 
$$B_i$$
. (c)
$$[I_{2i-1}(t_0')-I_{2i-1}(t_1')]^2 + [I_{2i}(t_0')-I_{2i}(t_1')]^2 - 4[1-\cos\frac{2\pi}{T}i(t_0'-t_1')] .$$

whence

$$W_{1,n}^{(i)}(t_0^i) - W_{1,n}^{(i)}(t_1^i) = \sqrt{2} \sigma \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n \left[1 - \cos\frac{2\pi i}{T}(t_0^i - t_1^i)\right] \frac{1}{T}} \bullet$$

Bearing in mind that  $n = (JL/2\pi)T$ , letting T approach  $\infty$ , and introducing the rotation x = i/T, dx = 1/T, we arrive at the expression

Bearing II and Bearing II are series at the expression 
$$x = i/T, \ dx = 1/T, \ we arrive at the expression 
$$x = i/T, \ dx = 1/T, \ we arrive at the expression 
$$x = i/T, \ dx = 1/T, \ we arrive at the expression 
$$x = i/T, \ dx = 1/T, \ we arrive at the expression 
$$x = i/T, \ dx = 1/T, \ we arrive at the expression 
$$x = i/T, \ dx = 1/T, \ dx = 1/T, \ we arrive at the expression 
$$x = i/T, \ dx = 1/T, \ dx$$$$$$$$$$$$$$

Substituting this value in (7-27), we o

Substituting this value in 
$$(7-29)$$

$$\delta = \frac{2\sigma \sqrt{\frac{\Omega}{2\pi}} \left[1 - \frac{\sin \Omega(t_0^* - t_1^*)}{\Omega(t_0^* - t_1^*)}\right] \bullet}{\tau_0 \left[\frac{\partial U_{\mathbf{n}}(t)}{\partial t}\right]_{t=t_0^*}}$$

As we see, in this case also the error is a random variable which obeys a Gaussian law. It follows from the formula just obtained that the mean square error for the given means of reception is equal to

(7-30) 
$$\delta_{m}^{2} = \frac{2 \int_{0}^{\infty} \left[1 - \frac{\sin \int_{0}^{\infty} (t_{0}^{-t} t_{1}^{-t})}{\int_{0}^{\infty} (t_{0}^{-t} t_{1}^{-t})}\right] \sigma^{2}}{\pi \tau_{0}^{2} \left[\frac{\partial U_{m}(t)}{\partial t}\right]_{t=t_{0}^{+}}^{2}}$$

Giving  $U_n/U_0$  various values, and using Eq. (7-2), we can find the quantity  $x = \Lambda(t_0^* - \frac{\tau_0 \lambda}{2})$ . which by the symmetry of  $U_m(t)$  equals  $\frac{1}{2} \ln (t_0' - t_1')$ . Then we can use Eqs. (7-20) and

(7-30) to find the quantity  $\delta_{\underline{m}}^{2}$ , obtaining

(7-51) 
$$\delta_{\mathbf{n}}^{2} = \frac{12\sigma^{2}}{\pi \eta_{2} \tau_{0}^{2} \eta_{2}^{2}} = \frac{6\sigma^{2}}{\eta_{2} \tau_{0}^{2} \eta_{2}^{2}}.$$

where the quantity  $\eta_2$ , which is a function of the ratio  $u_n/u_o$ , is given by curve 2 in Figure 7-2. A comparison of this with Eq. (7-13) shows that  $\eta_2$  is the efficiency coefficient for the given means of reception. As is evident from Figure 7-2,  $\eta_2$  is greater than  $\eta_1$ , and is near unity, approaching unity when  $U_n/U_0 \rightarrow 1$ . Thus, this kind of reception is more immune to noise than the kind analyzed in the preceding section, and for all practical purposes achieves the optimum noise immunity. We obtain the optimum noise immunity if  $U_n/U_0 = 1$ , i.e., if we take the readings near the peak of the pulse, or, what amounts to the same thing, if we determine the transmitted parameter by the position of the maximum amplitude of the pulse. It is clear that in the presence of weak noise, one cannot achieve a better means of reception than the one discussed in this section. The reason for the increase of noise immunity is clearly contained in the fact that in most cases (especially when  $U_{\mathbf{n}}/U_{\mathbf{0}}$  is near one), the noise which is added to the signal either simultaneously raises or simultaneously lowers both sides of the envelope of the signal pulse, so that the mean value of the quantities to and to changes less due to the action of the noise than either of these quantities separately.

# 7-7. Frequency modulation (general case)

We now consider the noise immunity of a system which transmits continuous values (of parameters) by the use of frequency modulation. In this case the signal can be

written as
$$A(\lambda,t) = U_{m}(t) \cos[(\omega_{o} + \Im \lambda)t + \emptyset_{o}]$$
(7-32)

In order to find the minimum mean square error, we apply to this signal the basic formula (6-40). We find

$$A_{\lambda}^{1}(\lambda,t) = -U_{\mathbf{m}}(t) \iint_{\mathbf{m}} \sin[(\omega_{0} + \iint_{\mathbf{m}} \lambda)t + \phi_{0}] .$$

and

$$\overline{\Lambda_{\lambda}^{12}(\lambda,t)} = \Omega^{2} \overline{U_{n}^{2}(t) t^{2} \sin^{2}[(\omega_{0} + \Omega_{\lambda})t + \emptyset_{0}]}$$

If we assume that the waveform  $U_m^2(t)t^2$  does not contain the frequencies  $2(\omega_0+i\Omega\lambda)$ , then according to Eq. (2-26), we obtain

$$\overline{\Lambda_{\lambda}^{*2}(\lambda,t)} = \frac{1}{2} i \Omega^{2} \overline{t^{2} v_{m}^{2}(t)} .$$

since we have

$$\frac{1}{\sin^2[(\omega_0 + \hbar\lambda)t + \phi_0]} = \frac{1}{2}$$

for sufficiently large T. Substituting this value in Eq. (6-38), we obtain

$$\delta_{nm}^2 = \frac{\sigma^2}{\Omega^2 T U_m^2(t) t^2}$$

Thus, the larger il and the larger the specific energy

(7-34) 
$$T \overline{U_{m}^{2}(t)t^{2}} = \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} t^{2}U_{m}^{2}(t)dt$$

of the waveform  $tU_m(t)$ , the smaller the error. It is apparent from Eq. (7-34) that this specific energy is proportional to the moment of inertia about the line t=0 of the area under the curve  $U_m^2(t)$ . According to (A-2), the specific energy of the signal under consideration is

(7-35) 
$$Q^2 = T \Lambda^2(\lambda, t) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} U_m^2(t) dt .$$

provided that the oscillation  $U_m^2(t)$  does not contain the frequencies  $2(\omega_0+4\lambda)$ , and provided that T is sufficiently large. Thus, this energy is proportional simply to the area under the curve  $U_m^2(t)$ .

If we wish to increase the optimum noise immunity without increasing the signal energy, we have to increase the moment of inertia about the line t=0 of the area under the curve  $U_m^2(t)$  without increasing the area. Clearly, this can be done by increasing the ordinates of the curve in parts which are far from the origin, and decreasing them in parts which are near the origin. By simply time-shifting the envelope of the signal further from the origin, we can also increase the moment of inertia, and therefore the noise immunity, without increasing the signal energy. This last fact may seem strange,

but is easily explained. In fact, when t=0, the argument of the cosine in Eq. (7-32), and therefore the expression itself, does not change when  $\lambda$  is changed; the larger t, the greater the change, which must lead to an enhancement of noise immunity. Therefore, shifting the envelope must actually lead to an increase in noise immunity. The significance of this shift can also be explained by the following mathematical transformation. If we time-shift the envelope of the signal (7-32) by an amount  $t_0$ , we obtain

$$U_{\mathbf{m}}(\mathbf{t}-\mathbf{t}_{0})\cos\left[(\omega_{0}+\mathbf{i}\mathbf{h}\lambda)\mathbf{t}+\mathbf{\beta}\right] = U_{\mathbf{m}}(\mathbf{t}')\cos\left[(\omega_{0}+\mathbf{i}\mathbf{h}\lambda)(\mathbf{t}'+\mathbf{t}_{0})+\mathbf{\beta}\right] =$$

$$= U_{\mathbf{m}}(\mathbf{t}')\cos\left[(\omega_{0}+\mathbf{i}\mathbf{h}\lambda)\mathbf{t}'+\omega_{0}\mathbf{t}_{0}+\mathbf{i}\mathbf{h}\lambda\mathbf{t}_{0}+\mathbf{\beta}\right]$$
(7-36)

where we denote t-t<sub>0</sub> by t<sup>\*</sup>. We see from this last expression that shifting the envelope is equivalent to making the initial phase of the cosine change with  $\lambda$ , which changes the noise immunity as well. We shall consider such a system in Section 7-9.

## 7-8. Frequency modulation (special case)

In this section we consider the special case of frequency modulation in which the signal is a section of a sine wave of constant amplitude, i.e.

$$A(\lambda,t) = U_0 \cos \left[ (\omega_0 + \mu | \lambda) t + \beta \right] , \text{ for } -\tau_0 / 2 \le t \le \tau_0 / 2 ,$$

$$A(\lambda,t) = 0 , \text{ for } t < -\tau_0 / 2 \text{ and } t > \tau_0 / 2 .$$

In this case the envelope can be expressed as

$$U_{m}(t) = U_{0}, \text{ for } -\tau_{0}/2 \le t \le \tau_{0}/2,$$

$$U_{m}(t) = 0, \text{ for } t < -\tau_{0}/2 \text{ and } t > \tau_{0}/2.$$

Therefore, according to the general formulas (7-33) and (7-35), we obtain

(7-39) 
$$Q^2 = \frac{U_0^2}{2} \tau_0$$

(7-40) 
$$\delta_{\text{EEI}}^2 = \frac{12\sigma^2}{\Omega^2 \tau_0^3 v_0^2} = \frac{6\sigma^2}{\Omega^2 \tau_0^2 Q^2}$$

Since for frequency modulation, the specific energy of the signal does not change when the transmitted parameter  $\lambda$  is changed, the signal curve lies on a hypersphere, just as for pulse time modulation. Comparing Eqs. (7-13) and (7-40) for pulse time modulation and frequency modulation, we see that the size of the minimum mean square error is given by the same expressions for both kinds of modulation. However, the quantities  $\Omega$  and  $\tau_0$ 

entering into these expressions have a different meaning. In 21. (7-13), Lldesignates half the maximum frequency change of the signal. However, the frequency band required for the transmission of signals by frequency modulation can be regarded as approximately equal to the maximum frequency change of the signal. Therefore, in both formulas, Lldesignates half the frequency band needed to transmit the signals. In Eq. (7-13),  $\tau_0$  designates the maximum time-shift of the signal pulse; in Eq. (7-40),  $\tau_0$  designates the signal length. However, the time needed to transmit the signal by pulse time modulation can be regarded as approximately equal to the maximum time displacement of the pulse. Therefore, in both formulas,  $\tau_0$  designates the time required to transmit the signals. Thus, we obtain the same optimum noise immunity for the transmission of signals by pulse time modulation and frequency modulation, provided that they have the same duration, the same frequency band, and the same energy.

Comparing these two forms of modulation with amplitude modulation (Section 7-1), we see that they afford greater noise immunity in the case where  $\tau_0^2 \sqrt{1}/3 > 1$ . The three kinds of modulation considered as examples are far from exhausting the very large variety of possible schemes. We saw that increasing the noise immunity for amplitude modulation required an increase of signal energy. With frequency modulation and pulse time modulation, we were able to increase the noise immunity in the presence of weak noise without increasing the signal energy; rather, it was necessary to increase the time or bandwidth occupied by the signal. In the next section, we shall consider ways of increasing noise immunity in the presence of weak noise which do not require that we either increase the signal energy or that we increase the time or bandwidth occupied by the signal.

7-9. Raising the noise immunity without increasing the energy, length, or bandwidth of the signal

In this section we consider systems where it is possible in theory to increase indefinitely the optimum noise immunity in the presence of noise with sufficiently low intensity, without thereby increasing the energy of the signals or increasing the time or bandwidth occupied by them. Let the transmitted signal be defined by the following

expression

(7-41) 
$$A(\lambda,t) = U_0 \cos \left[ (\omega_0 + A \lambda)t + \beta + \alpha \lambda \right] , \text{ for } -\tau_0/2 \leqslant t \leqslant \tau_0/2 .$$

$$A(\lambda,t) = 0 , \text{ for } t \leqslant -\tau_0/2 \text{ and } t > \tau_0/2 .$$

Thus, this signal differs from the one discussed earlier in connection with frequency modulation in that its phase also changes in accordance with the transmitted parameter. For this signal we obtain

$$A_{\lambda}'(\lambda,t) = - \sqrt[4]{(\mu + \alpha) \sin \left[ (\omega + \mu \lambda) t + \beta + \alpha \lambda \right]} , \text{ for } -\tau_0/2 \le t \le \tau_0/2 .$$

whence

$$T = \frac{1}{\lambda^{1/2}(\lambda, t)} = U_0^2 \int_{-\tau_0/2}^{+\tau_0/2} (dk t + a)^2 \sin^2[(\omega_0 + dk\lambda)t + d + a\lambda] dt =$$

$$= U_0^2 \int_{-\tau_0/2}^{+\tau_0/2} \frac{1}{2} (\text{d} t + \mathbf{e})^2 dt - U_0^2 \int_{-\tau_0/2}^{+\tau_0/2} \frac{1}{2} (\text{d} t + \mathbf{e})^2 \cos 2 \left[ (\omega_0 + \text{d} h \lambda) t + \phi + \mathbf{e} \lambda \right] dt .$$

The second integral goes to zero as  $\omega_0$  is increased, and can therefore be neglected for sufficiently large  $\omega_0$ . Thus we obtain

$$T = \frac{U_0^2}{A_{\lambda}^{12}(\lambda, t)} = \frac{U_0^2}{24} (\Omega^2 \tau_0^3 + 12\tau_0^2)$$
,

from which it follows that the minimum mean square error characterizing the optimum noise immunity for the signals in question is given by

(7-42) 
$$\delta_{nmn}^{2} = \frac{12\sigma^{2}}{U_{o}^{2}(\int_{0}^{L^{2}} \tau_{o}^{3} + 12\tau_{o}^{2} \sigma^{2})} = \frac{6\sigma^{2}}{\tau_{o}^{2} \int_{0}^{L^{2}} Q^{2} (1 + 12 \frac{\sigma^{2}}{\int_{0}^{L^{2}} \tau_{o}^{2}})}$$

As can be seen from this formula, the error can be made arbitrarily small by increasing a.

At the same time, changing the value of a does not change the energy, bandwidth, or duration of the signal. An analogous result is obtained in the case of pulse time modulation, discussed in Section 7-3, if we change the phase of the high frequency oscillation in proportion to the transmitted parameter.

In practice, it is quite difficult to realize the optimum noise immunity of these systems, since to do so we require a receiver which responds to the initial phase of the high frequency signal oscillation. However, it is possible to propose modulation systems

for which it would be easier to realize great noise immunity in practice. An example of such a system is a system with the signal

such a system is a system with the signal 
$$A(\lambda,t) = U_0 \left[1 + \cos(\omega L_0 t + a\lambda)\right] \cos(\omega_0 + \omega L_0)t , \text{ for } -\tau_0/2 \le t \le \tau_0/2 ,$$

$$A(\lambda,t) = 0 , \text{ for } t < -\tau_0/2 \text{ and } t > \tau_0/2 .$$

This signal has an advantage over the signals considered above in that it undergoes a change in phase of the low frequency oscillation rather than of the high frequency oscillation. This phase is changed less when the signal is propagated, and is more easily detected by the receiver.

The examples considered are far from exhausting all possible versions of modulation systems for which the noise immunity in the presence of weak noise can be made arbitrarily large. For example, such modulation systems can be constructed by the following general principle. Some signal parameter, e.g., a phase, has to change in accordance with the transmitted parameter \(\lambda\), and an arbitrary change of this signal parameter must not increase the time or frequency space allotted to the signal, nor increase its energy. Thus, this parameter can be changed by an arbitrarily large amount, which thereby makes the signal curve arbitrarily long and arbitrarily increases the noise immunity in the presence of weak noise. However, the variation of this parameter alone is usually not sufficient, since it produces periodic changes in the signal, so that the same signal will correspond to different values of the parameter. To remove this multiple-valuedness, it is necessary to simultaneously vary some other parameter as well, e.g., the frequency of the oscillation, its amplitude, the location of the signal pulse in time, etc. This change must be confined within certain limits, since it usually produces a change in the signal energy, or a change in the time or frequency space allotted to the signal.

The defect of the systems considered in this section is revealed if we study their noise immunity in the presence of noise of high intensity, a topic to which the next chapter is devoted. It is found that the larger we make the noise immunity by the methods precented in this section, the lower the noise intensity at which the boundary between "strong" and "weak" noise occurs, and the formulas which we have derived are not valid for "strong" noise. In the limit, the methods presented here allow one to reduce to zero the error

resulting from the action of "weak" noise, but at the same time, "week" noise comes to mean noise with an intensity which is itself equal to zero. Thus, we cannot succeed in completely nullifying the action of noise by these methods, as might otherwise be expected; we can only obtain a reduction of its effect. This reduction is worthwhile for communication in the presence of noise with sufficiently low intensity, when it is necessary to have very few errors.

### CHAPTER 8

NOISE IMMUNITY FOR TRANSMISSION OF SEPARATE PARAMETER

VALUES IN THE PRESENCE OF STRONG NOISE

8-1. Derivation of the general formula for evaluating the effect of high intensity noise. In this chapter we evaluate the optimum noise immunity for transmission of parameters in the presence of high intensity noise. We denote by  $P_{\lambda}$  ( $\lambda > \lambda_b$ ) the probability that when the parameter value  $\lambda_a$  is transmitted, the receiver, as a result of the addition of noise to the signal, reproduces a parameter  $\lambda$  satisfying the condition  $\lambda > \lambda_b$ ; by  $P_{\lambda}$  ( $\lambda < \lambda_b$ ) we denote the probability that when the parameter value  $\lambda_a$  is transmitted, the receiver, as a result of the addition of noise to the signal, reproduces a parameter value satisfying the condition  $\lambda < \lambda_b$ . Obviously, these probabilities depend on both the method of transmission, i.e., on  $A(\lambda,t)$ , and on the method of reception. With this notation, the probability that the error  $\delta$  exceeds  $\epsilon$  in absolute value, if the parameter  $\lambda_1$  was transmitted, equals

$$P_{\lambda_1}(\lambda > \lambda_1 + \epsilon) + P_{\lambda_1}(\lambda < \lambda_1 - \epsilon)$$
.

We shall assume that the transmitted parameter  $\lambda_1$  can take on any value in the range -1,+1 with equal probability. Then the probability that  $\lambda_1$  satisfies the inequality

$$y^5 \leqslant y^1 \leqslant y^5 + qy^5$$

and that at the came time  $|\delta| > \epsilon$ , is equal to

$$\left[P_{\lambda_{2}}(\lambda > \lambda_{2} + \varepsilon) + P_{\lambda_{2}}(\lambda < \lambda_{2} - \varepsilon)\right]^{\frac{d\lambda_{2}}{2}} .$$

Hence, the probability that the error exceeds  $\epsilon$  in absolute value, whon a parameter value

 $\lambda_{\rm l}$  (not known in advence) is transmitted, equals

$$P(|\delta| > \epsilon) = \int_{-1}^{+1} [P_{\lambda_2}(\lambda > \lambda_2 + \epsilon) + P_{\lambda_2}(\lambda < \lambda_2 - \epsilon)] \frac{d\lambda_2}{2} = \int_{-1}^{+1} P_{\lambda_2}(\lambda > \lambda_2 + \epsilon) \frac{d\lambda_2}{2} + \int_{-1}^{+1} P_{\lambda_2}(\lambda < \lambda_2 - \epsilon) \frac{d\lambda_2}{2}.$$

Clearly, the value of the integrals is not changed if we substitute the quantity  $\lambda_0 = \lambda_2 + \epsilon$  into the first integral, and the quantity  $\lambda_0 = \lambda_2 - \epsilon$  into the second, making corresponding changes in the limits of integration. Then we obtain

$$\begin{split} P(|\delta| > \varepsilon) &= \int\limits_{-1+\varepsilon}^{+1+\varepsilon} P_{\lambda_0^{\varepsilon}}(\lambda > \lambda_0) \frac{d\lambda_0}{2} + \int\limits_{-1-\varepsilon}^{+1-\varepsilon} P_{\lambda_0^{+\varepsilon}}(\lambda < \lambda_0) \frac{d\lambda_0}{2} \geqslant \\ &\geqslant \int\limits_{-(1-\varepsilon)}^{1-\varepsilon} \left[ P_{\lambda_0^{-\varepsilon}}(\lambda > \lambda_0) + P_{\lambda_0^{+\varepsilon}}(\lambda < \lambda_0) \right] \frac{d\lambda_0}{2} \end{split} ,$$

since the expressions under the integrals are always positive.

Let us digress a bit to calculate the quantity in rectangular brackets. Let  $A_1(t) = A(\lambda_0 - \epsilon, t)$  and  $A_2(t) = A(\lambda_0 + \epsilon, t)$  be two discrete signals, such as were discussed in Chapter 4. Let the receiver under consideration, which serves to determine the parameter  $\lambda$ , be used to receive these signals. We shall say that the first signal  $A_1(t) = A(\lambda_0 - \epsilon, t)$  was sent if the receiver reproduces a  $\lambda < \lambda_0$ , and that the second signal was sent if the receiver reproduces a  $\lambda > \lambda_0$ . Then the probability of error for these signals and the given receiver is

$$\frac{1}{2} \left[ P_{\lambda_o - \varepsilon} (\lambda \rangle \lambda_o) + P_{\lambda_o + \varepsilon} (\lambda \langle \lambda_o) \right]$$

if we assume that the <u>a priori</u> probability of transmitting either signal is the same.

However, this probability of error cannot be less than the probability of error (given by Eq. (4-8)) which determines the optimum noise immunity for the signals in question, i.e.

$$\frac{1}{2} \left[ P_{\lambda_0 - \varepsilon}(\lambda > \lambda_0) + P_{\lambda_0 + \varepsilon}(\lambda < \lambda_0) \right] \geqslant V(\alpha_1)$$

where  $V(\alpha)$  is defined by Eq. (2-47);  $\alpha_1$  is defined by Eq. (4-4) and in this case equals  $(8-1) \quad \alpha_1 = \sqrt{\frac{T}{2\sigma^2} \frac{|\Lambda(\lambda_0 + \epsilon, t) - \Lambda(\lambda_0 - \epsilon, t)|^2}{|\Lambda(\lambda_0 + \epsilon, t) - \Lambda(\lambda_0 - \epsilon, t)|^2}} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \int_{-T/2}^{[\Lambda(\lambda_0 + \epsilon, t) - \Lambda(\lambda_0 - \epsilon, t)]^2} dt$ 

From this we obtain the universal formula

(8-2) 
$$P(|5| > \varepsilon) \geqslant \int_{-(1-\varepsilon)}^{1-\varepsilon} V(\alpha_1) d\lambda_0$$

for calculating the probability of errors greater than  $\epsilon$ . In many cases  $\alpha_1$  does not depend on  $\lambda_0$ . If this is the case, the quantity under the integral is constant, and we obtain

$$P(|\delta| > \epsilon) \geqslant 2(1-\epsilon)V(\alpha_1) .$$

It follows from these equations that the smaller the distance

$$\sqrt{\frac{1}{|A(\lambda_0 + \epsilon, t) - A(\lambda_0 - \epsilon, t)|^2}}$$

between the points of the signal curve corresponding to parameter values which are separated from one another by the amount 2c, the larger the probability of obtaining an error 5 exceeding c.

# 8-2. Comparison of the formulas for weak and strong noise

We now compare the result obtained in the preceding section with the result obtained in Chapter 6 for the case of weak noise; there we derived Eq. (6-19), which gives the probability that the error 5 is greater than  $\epsilon$ , for the ideal receiver in the presence of weak noise. This formula is valid for a given most probable value  $\lambda_{xm}$ . If we assume that all  $\lambda_{xm}$  are equally probable, then when  $\lambda_{xm}$  is not known in advance, we obtain the following expression for the probability in question:

(8-4) 
$$P(|\delta| > \varepsilon) = \int_{-1}^{+1} V(\alpha) d\lambda_{xxx},$$

where
$$\alpha = \frac{\sqrt{2T \, A_{\lambda}^{12} (\lambda_{xm}, t)}}{\sigma} \epsilon .$$

Let us compare this result with the result given by Eq. (8-2), which is universal and is suitable both for strong and weak noise. For small  $\epsilon$ , we can take

$$A(\lambda_0^{+\epsilon},t) - A(\lambda_0^{-\epsilon},t) = A_{\lambda}^{\dagger}(\lambda_0^{-\epsilon},t)$$
 2e

94

Substituting this value in Eq. (8-1), we obtain
$$a_1 = \frac{\sqrt{2TA_{\lambda}^{1/2}(\lambda_0, t)}}{\sigma} t .$$

This quantity is to be substituted in Eq. (8-2), which gives a lower bound for the probability of error. From these formulas, we see that a = a1, which means that the right sides of Eqs. (9-2) and (8-4) differ only by their limits of integration, a difference which goes to zero as  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$ . It follows from these expressions that if the inequality (8-2) is changed to an equality, then it gives the value of the probability of the small errors produced by the ideal receiver in the presence of weak noise.

# 8-3. Pulse time modulation

For amplitude and other linear modulation, the formulas obtained in Chapter 7 are valid for noise of arbitrary intensity, and therefore there is no point in investigating these kinds of modulation using the methods of Section 8-1. The situation is different in the case of pulse time modulation. For this kind of modulation, according to Eqs. (2-26), (7-9) and (8-1), we obtain

$$\alpha_{1}^{2} = \frac{\text{TU}_{0}^{2}}{2\sigma^{2}} \left\{ \frac{\sinh\left[t - \frac{\tau_{0}}{2}(\lambda_{0} + \varepsilon)\right]}{\sin\left[t - \frac{\tau_{0}}{2}(\lambda_{0} + \varepsilon)\right]} - \frac{\sin\left[t - \frac{\tau_{0}}{2}(\lambda_{0} - \varepsilon)\right]}{\sin\left[t - \frac{\tau_{0}}{2}(\lambda_{0} - \varepsilon)\right]} \right\} \cos^{2}\omega_{0}t =$$

$$= \frac{\text{U}_{0}^{2}}{4\sigma^{2}} \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \left\{ \frac{\sinh\left[t - \frac{\tau_{0}}{2}(\lambda_{0} + \varepsilon)\right]}{\sin\left[t - \frac{\tau_{0}}{2}(\lambda_{0} + \varepsilon)\right]} - \frac{\sinh\left[t - \frac{\tau_{0}}{2}(\lambda_{0} - \varepsilon)\right]}{\sin\left[t - \frac{\tau_{0}}{2}(\lambda_{0} - \varepsilon)\right]} \right\} dt .$$

Changing the limits of integration in this integral to  $-\infty$  and  $+\infty$ , introducing the value of the specific signal energy  $Q^2$  given by Eq. (7-12), and integrating, we obtain

(8-8) 
$$\alpha_1^2 = \frac{\pi U_0^2}{2\sigma^2 \Omega} \left(1 - \frac{\sin \Omega U_0}{\Omega U_0}\right) = \frac{Q^2}{Q^2} \left(1 - \frac{\sin \Omega U_0}{\Omega U_0}\right).$$

As we see,  $a_1$  does not depend on  $\lambda_0$ , which means that we can use Eq. (8-3) to calculate the probability of error.

The curve a, b, c, d, e in Figure 3-1 gives the dependence of the quantity in parentheses in Eq. (8-8) on the parameter  $\Delta \tau_0 c$  , which is plotted as the abscissa. This quantity determines  $a_1$  and  $2V(a_1)$  for a given value of  $Q/\sigma_*$ . In the figure there are five scales along the axis of ordinates, from which the value  $2V(a_1)$  can be found directly for the values  $Q/\sigma = 1$ , 2, 3, 4, 6. Since for small  $\epsilon$  the quantity  $P(|\delta| > \epsilon)$  must be largor than  $2V(a_1)$ , and moreover must be a monotonically decreasing function of  $\epsilon$ , then for  $\epsilon \ll 1$ , the curve representing the dependence of  $P(|\delta|>\epsilon)$  on  $\epsilon$  must lie above the ourve a, b', c, d', e, obtained from the curve a, b, c, d, e by filling in its valleys. This must be the case for any means of reception, including ideal reception. Thus, the value of the probability  $P(|\delta|>c)$  which characterizes the ideal receiver must lie above the curve a, b', c, d', e. In the case of weak noise, for small values of the quantity If  $t_0 \epsilon$  and for ideal reception, we can determine  $P(|\delta| > \epsilon)$ , using Eqs. (6-19) and (8-5). This quantity is represented in Figure 8-1 by the curve a''. It is apparent from an examination of the figure, that for Atte (2.7, the curves a, b', c, d', e and a'' are quite close together. However, for  $\mathfrak{A}_{\tau}$   $\epsilon$  >2.7, we obtain a drastic divergence between them, with the curve a'' going below the curve a, b', c, d', e, which is impossible, as remarked. It follows from this that for Autoc > 2.7, the formula for weak noise and small errors is completely inapplicable.

We now clarify these results. For the given means of communication and for the methods of reception described in Sections 7-5 and 7-6, small errors are caused by weak noise, which produces a displacement of the sides of the pulse. The probability of this type of error falls off sharply as the error is increased. Large errors are obtained when the noise waveform exceeds the threshold voltage Un. It is clear that this can happen with almost equal probability at any time. Therefore, the probability of large errors does not fall off much when the error is increased. This property, which is easy to explain for the method of reception in question, is (as shown by Figure 8-1) a necessary feature of the given means of communication, regardless of which means of detection we use. The large errors, for which the formulas derived in Chapter 6 for weak noise

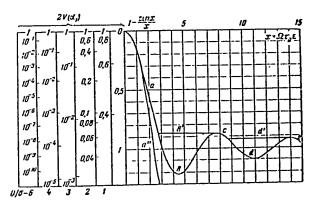


Fig. 8-1. The curve a,b',c,d',e is the lower bound for the probability of an error greater than e for pulse time and frequency modulation and strong noise, for different  $Q/\sigma$  (several scales along ordinate axis); Q is the specific signal energy;  $Q/\pi$  is the bandwidth and  $\tau$  the time occupied by the signal; the curve  $a^{zz}$  is the probability that the error exceeds e, obtained from the weak noise formula.

must begin at least from the value  $t = 2.7/M_{\odot}$  on. For example, it is clear from the figure that for  $Q/\sigma = 2$ , the probability that an anomalous error occurs, must be greater than  $6 \times 10^{-2}$ . This means that in more than 6 percent of the cases, on the average, anomalous errors occur for the given value of  $Q/\sigma$ . In general, the probability of occurrence of anomalous errors can be found using the fact that they begin whom  $A \cup \tau > 2.7$ . Thus, according to (8-8), these errors begin for

$$a^2 = \frac{Q^2}{\sigma^2} \left(1 - \frac{\sin 2.7}{2.7}\right) - \frac{Q^2}{\sigma^2}$$

which means that their probability is

(8-9) 
$$P(\delta \text{ anomalous}) 7.2V(Q/\sigma)$$
.

For low intensity noise, the probability of anomalous errors is very small, so that they need not be considered and the weak noise theory can be applied.

## 8-4. Frequency modulation

We now apply the results obtained in this chapter to the case of frequency modulation, considered in Section 7-7. We have a signal given by Eq. (7-37). Applying Eq. (8-1) to this signal, and taking (2-26) into account, we obtain

$$\alpha_{1}^{2} = \frac{\text{TU}_{0}^{2}}{2\sigma^{2}} \left\{ \frac{\cos \left[ (\omega_{0} + M\lambda_{0} + M\epsilon)t + \phi \right] - \cos \left[ (\omega_{0} + M\lambda_{0} - M\epsilon)t + \phi \right] \right\}^{2}}{\sin^{2}M\epsilon t \sin^{2}\left[ (\omega_{0} + M\lambda_{0})t + \phi \right]} = \frac{\text{U}_{0}^{2} + \tau_{0}/2}{\sigma^{2}} \int_{-\tau_{0}/2}^{2} \sin^{2}M\epsilon t \, dt.$$

Doing this integral, and introducing the value of the specific signal energy given by Eq. (7-39), we have

(8-10) 
$$\alpha_1^2 = \frac{Q^2}{\sigma^2} \left(1 - \frac{\sinh \tau_0 \epsilon}{\hbar \Gamma_0 \epsilon}\right).$$

Comparing this formula with the formula (8-8) for  $a_1^2$  in the case of pulse time modulation, we see that they are identical. Therefore, all the results obtained for pulse time modulation are applicable to this case also.

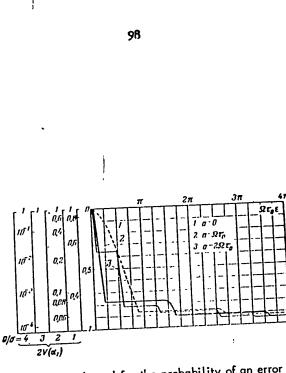


Fig. 8-2. Lower bound for the probability of an error greater than  $\epsilon$  for the signals given by Eq.(7-41) for various Q/ $\sigma$ . Curve 1 is for  $\alpha=0$ , 2 for  $\alpha=\Omega\tau_{\sigma}$ , 3 for  $\alpha=2\Omega\tau_{\sigma}$ ; Q is the specific energy,  $\tau_{\sigma}$  the duration, and  $\pm\Omega/2\pi$  the maximum frequency deviation of the signal.

8-5. The system for raising the noise immunity without increasing the energy, length, or bandwidth of the signal

In this section, we shall evaluate the noise immunity in the presence of strong noise of the system which we discussed in Section 7-9. This system allowed us to make the noise immunity arbitrarily large, provided that the noise was sufficiently weak. In this case, the signal is given by Eq. (7-41), and by a calculation completely analogous to that of the preceding section, we obtain

(8-11) 
$$\alpha_1^2 = \frac{Q^2}{\sigma^2} \left(1 - \frac{\sin A \tau_0 \epsilon}{A \tau_0 \epsilon} \cos 2 \alpha \epsilon\right) .$$

Figure 8-2 shows the curves giving the dependence of the quantity in parentheses in Eq. (8-11) on the value of the parameter  $\Omega_{0}$ , for three values of  $\Omega_{0}$ , i.e.,  $\Omega_{0}=0$  for curve 1,  $\Omega_{0}=\Omega_{0}$  for curve 2, and  $\Omega_{0}=2\Omega_{0}$  for curve 3. In accordance with the considerations presented in Section 8-3, the valleys of these curves have been filled in. For a given value of  $\Omega_{0}$ , the quantity in parentheses in Eq. (8-11) determines the values of  $\Omega_{0}$  and  $\Omega_{0}=0$ . The value of  $\Omega_{0}=0$  can be read off at once by using the scales along the axis of ordinates in Figure 8-2.

As we have shown, the probability  $P(|\delta| > \epsilon)$  has to be greater than or equal to the value of  $2V(\alpha_1)$ , if we neglect the effect of the factor 1- $\epsilon$  in Eq. (8-3), and moreover equals the value of  $2V(\alpha_1)$  for small values of the error  $\epsilon$ , for weak noise, and for reception with the ideal receiver. It is apparent from the curves shown that the noise immunity for small  $\epsilon$ , i.e., for small errors, increases as  $\alpha$  increases. Thus, under these circumstances, the curves do not restrict the validity of the results obtained in Section 7-9 for this modulation system. On the other hand, it follows from Figure 8-2 that the larger  $\alpha$ , the smaller the values of  $\epsilon$  at which anomalous errors occur, and the larger the probability of such errors. This proves the statement made at the end of Section 7-9 concerning the defects of this and similar modulation systems. However, it is apparent from the curves that if the value of  $\alpha$  is not made too large, then the use of such a modulation system can be worthwhile. In fact, comparing the curves of Figure 8-2 for  $\alpha$  = 0 and

 $\alpha = \Lambda_{\tau_0}$ , we see that for small  $\epsilon$  the value of the quantity in parentheses in Eq. (8-11), and therefore the quantity  $a_1^2$ , is ten times larger in the second case than in the first, which greatly increases the noise immunity for weak noise. However, in the second case, anomalous errors begin to occur (as shown by the figure) when the quantity in parentheses has the value 0.78, which is before the value of 2.7 at which they begin to occur in the first case. Therefore, in the second case, the probability of occurrence of anomalous errors is greater than  $2V(\sqrt{0.78} \ Q/\sigma)$ , while in the first case it is greater than  $2V(\sqrt{2.7} \ Q/\sigma)$ . If we go to the case  $\alpha = 2\Lambda \tau_0$ , then, for small  $\epsilon$ , the noise immunity increases further, but at the same time the probability of anomalous errors increases appreciably, and is in this case greater than  $2V(\sqrt{0.36} \ Q/\sigma)$ .

#### 8-6. Geometric interpretation of the results of chapter 8

The inequalities (8-2) and (8-3) show that the smaller the distance between the points of the signal curve corresponding to parameter values differing by the amount 2c. the smaller  $a_1$ , and the larger the probability that the error exceeds the value  $c_n$ . Thus, the smaller this distance, the smaller the noise immunity. This situation is quite natural, since the smaller the distance between the points corresponding to the two signals, the larger the probability that the signals will be confused for each other and will be incorrectly reproduced by the receiver, as a consequence of the addition of noise and the resulting displacement of the points. For the cases of pulse time modulation and frequency modulation, the value of  $\alpha_1$  and of this distance at first increase in proportion to  $\epsilon$ , and then stop growing and even begin to decrease from A T = 4.5 on see Fig. 8-1). This property of the modulation allows us to increase the length of the signal curve and thereby increase the noise immunity without increasing the signal energy, but it is also responsible for the appearance of anomalous errors. In geometric terms, the problem of increasing the noise immunity in the presence of weak noise, without increasing the energy, length, or bandwidth of the signal, reduces to increasing the length of the signal curve without having the curve leave a certain hypersphere (the redius of which is determined by the maximum energy given to the signal), and without increasing the number of dimensions of the space in

101

question. It is clear that a signal curve of any length can be constructed which lies within the volume of any hypersphere. However, when the length of the curve is increased, the distance between separate "twists" or sections of the curve must decrease, which perforce increases the probability of anomalous errors. Thus, the law which we noted in a special case is obviously valid in general, namely an indefinite increase of the noise immunity in the presence of weak noise without increasing the specific energy, duration, or bandwidth of the signal is necessarily accompanied by an increase in the probability of anomalous errors. If we increase the duration or tendwidth of the signal, we thereby increase the number of dimonsions of the space in which the signal curve lies. In this case, we can increase the length of the curve without leaving a given hypersphore and without bringing different sections of the curve close together.

,

#### PART IV

## TRANSMISSION OF WAVEFORMS

### CHAPTER 9

GENERAL THEORY OF THE INFLUENCE OF WEAK NOISE ON THE TRANSPISSION OF WAVEFORES 9-1. General considerations

In communication engineering one deals in many cases not with the transmission of mossages which can take on discrete values (as, for example, in the case of telegraphy), nor with the transmission of separate parameter values (es, for example, in the case of the transmission of separate measurements by telemetering), but rather with the transmission of time functions, which can vary continuously and can take on an infinite number of forms (as, for example, in the case of telephony). We shall consider this last type of transmission in Part IV.

To simplify our considerations, we shall assume that the transmitted waveform (a sound wave, say) is periodic with period T (this can always be achieved artificially by taking T large enough), and that the frequency spectrum of the waveform contains in effect only components indexed from i to i2. In this case, we can write the transmitted wave-

form as
$$(9-1) F(t) = \sum_{i=1}^{i_2} (\lambda_{2i-1} \sqrt{2} \sin^{2\pi}_{T} it + \lambda_{2i} \sqrt{2} \cos^{2\pi}_{T} it) = \sum_{f=f_1}^{f} \lambda_{f} I_{f}(t) .$$

where the  $\lambda_{\ell}$  are certain constants determined by the waveform, the I<sub> $\ell$ </sub>(t) are the orthonormal functions defined by Eqs. (2-14), and  $l_1 = 2i_1 - 1$ ,  $l_2 = 2i_2$ . For simplicity, we shall assume henceforth that the function F(t) takes values lying between -1 and +1, and does not take any values outside this range.

The waveform (S-1) is transmitted by using another waveform, which we shall call the signal. Since we have assumed that the transmitted waveform is periodic, we can also assume that the signal is periodic. Irasmuch as the transmitted waveform (9-1) is completely determined by  $l_2 - l_1 + 1$  parameters, the signal must depend on these parameters  $\lambda_{1}$ . Thus, in general, the signal can be represented by the expression

$$(9-2) \qquad \qquad \lambda(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_2; t) \qquad .$$

For browity, we write this expression on occasion as

The noise  $V_{\mu,\nu}$  is added to the signal, so that the received waveform has the form

$$\chi(t) = \Lambda_{F}(t) + \pi_{\mu_{F} \nu}(t)$$
 (9-4)

We assume, as before, that the function  $\eta_{\mu,\nu}$  is periodic, and moreover, that it has the same period T as the period of  $A_{\overline{F}}(t)$ . Clearly, we can always assume this, since in both cases the same requirement is imposed on the period, namely that it be sufficiently large. When the waveform X(t) is received, the receiver has to reproduce F(t) with as great accuracy as possible.

### 9-2. The influence of weak noise on the transmitted waveforms

As we specified, the transmitted waveform is completely determined by the parameters  $l_1, \dots, l_k$  Chwiously, in reproducing F(t) the receiver thereby reproduces the given paremeters. We represent the waveform (9-4) as

(9-5) 
$$x(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{n} x_k^c c_k(t)$$

where the  $C_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{t})$  are some system of orthonormal functions. Clearly, the parameters  $\lambda_{\mathbf{k}}$ reproduced by the receiver are functions of the quantities  $\mathbf{x}_{k}$  characterizing the received waveform X(t). Thus we can write

waveform X(t). Thus we can write
$$\lambda_{\ell} = \int_{\ell}^{\ell} (x_1, \dots, x_n), \, \ell_1 \leq \ell \leq \ell_2 \quad .$$
(9-6)

The form of these functions depends on the modulation system and the receiver. If the received waveform receives an increment

(9-7) 
$$dx(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{n} C_k(t) dx_k \qquad \bullet$$

then, obviously, the parameters he receive increments

then, obviously, the parameters 
$$\frac{1}{2}$$
  $\frac{1}{2}$   $\frac{$ 

whore

where
$$(9-9) \qquad \qquad \underset{k=1}{\overset{n}{\sum}} \frac{\partial \overline{\psi}_{k}}{\partial x_{k}} c_{k}(t)$$

We assume that the receiver correctly reproduces the transmitted waveform in the absence of noise. Let the transmitted waveform be changed in such a way that  $\lambda_{\ell}$  receives an increment  $d\lambda_{\ell}$ . Then the signal and therefore the waveform X(t) (since noise is absent) must receive the increment

$$dX(t) = D_{\rho}(t) d\lambda$$

where

$$p_{\underline{\ell}}(t) = \partial A_{\underline{r}}(t) / \partial \lambda_{\underline{\ell}} .$$

It follows from (9-8) and the fact that the receiver must reproduce the transmitted waveform without error that the relation

$$d\lambda_{\ell} = \overline{L_{\ell}(t)dX(t)} = \overline{L_{\ell}(t)D_{\ell}(t)}d\lambda$$

is walid, i.e., that

(9-11) 
$$\overline{L_{\hat{\ell}}(\mathbf{t})D_{\hat{\ell}}(\mathbf{t})} = 1 \quad .$$

On the other hand, the remaining parameters  $\lambda_{j}$  (i  $\neq \ell$ ) are not changed, so that

$$d\lambda_{i} = \overline{L_{i}(t)dX(t)} = \overline{L_{i}(t)D_{\ell}(t)} d\lambda_{\ell} = 0 ,$$

whence

(9-12) 
$$\overline{L_{i}(t)D_{\ell}(t)} = 0, i \neq \ell.$$

Thus, for any receiver which correctly reproduces the transmitted waveforms in the absence of noise, Eqs. (9-11) and (9-12) must be satisfied, where  $\ell$  is any integer from  $\ell_1$  to  $\ell_2$ .

Now suppose a waveform is transmitted which is characterized by the parameters  $\lambda_{\ell}$ , and let the noise  $W_{\mu,\nu}(t)$  (with sufficiently low intensity) be added to the signal which is used to transmit the waveform. Then, due to the action of noise, the received waveform receives an increment

$$dx(t) = W_{u,v}(t)$$

as a result of which the parameters of the waveform reproduced by the receiver receive

and are equal to  $\lambda_{\ell}$  +  $d\lambda_{\ell}$  . Thus, the increments  $d\lambda_{\ell}$  resulting from the action of noise are random variables which obey a Gaussian law. The smaller

$$(9-14) \qquad \qquad \sqrt{L_{\underline{\mathfrak{p}}}^{2}(t)}$$

the smaller the increments, and therefore the smaller the errors given by the receiver. If we choose the  $L_{\ell}(t)$  in such a way that they satisfy Eqs. (9-11) and (9-12), and such that at the same time the values (9-14) have the least possible values, then the receiver characterized by such  $L_{p}(t)$  will give the least reproduction error for sufficiently weak noise. In the next section, we shall find the optimum values of L (t); later on, we shall show that the receiver having those values of  $L_{\ell}(t)$  exists, at least in principle.

### 9-3. Conditions for the ideal receiver

We now find the conditions which the  $I_{i}(t)$  must satisfy, i.e., the conditions which the receiver must satisfy, in order that weak noise should produce as small errors as possible in the transmitted waveform. To shall call the receivor which satisfies these conditions ideal. We shall consider the case where all the

are mutually orthogonal, and where

(9-15 bis) 
$$\overline{p_{2i-1}^2(t)} = \overline{p_i^2(t)} \quad .$$

This case is the most interesting, since, as we shall see, these conditions are satisfied for all the modulation systems used in practice. The presence of these conditions will greatly simplify the subsequent considerations and the final results.

Any function, including  $L_{0}(t)$ , can be written as

(9-16) 
$$L_{\mathbf{A}}(t) = \frac{D_{\mathbf{A}}(t)}{D_{\mathbf{A}}^{2}(t)} + B_{\mathbf{A}}(t) .$$

where B (t) is an as yet unspecified function. Substituting this quantity in Eq. (9-11), we obtain

$$\frac{\overline{D_{\ell}^{2}(t)}}{\overline{D_{\ell}^{2}(t)}} + \frac{\overline{D_{\ell}(t)} \, B_{\ell}(t)}{P_{\ell}(t)} = 1 \quad .$$

whence

$$\overline{D_{\rho}(t) B_{\rho}(t)} = 0 .$$

 $\overline{D_{\rho}(t) B_{\rho}(t)} = 0$ Substituting Eq. (9-15) into Eq. (9-12), we obtain

$$\frac{\overline{D_{\varrho}(t)D_{i}(t)}}{\overline{D_{i}^{2}(t)}} + \overline{D_{\varrho}(t)} B_{i}(t) = 0.$$

However, since i  $\neq L$ , so that  $\overline{D_i(t)D_i(t)} = 0$ , we must have  $\overline{D_{g}(t)B_{i}(t)} = 0$ .

Thus, in order for  $L_{\ell}(t)$  to satisfy Eqs. (9-11) and (9-12), it is necessary and sufficient that each  $B_1(t)$ ,  $i = l_1, \dots, l_2$ , be orthogonal to all the  $D_1(t)$ , for  $l = l_1, \dots, l_2$ .

According to (9-16), we have

(9-17) 
$$\frac{\overline{L_{\ell}^{2}(t)}}{\overline{D_{\ell}^{2}(t)}} = \frac{\left[\frac{D_{\ell}(t)}{D_{\ell}^{2}(t)} + B_{\ell}(t)\right]^{2}}{\left[\frac{D_{\ell}(t)}{D_{\ell}^{2}(t)} + B_{\ell}^{2}(t)\right]} = \frac{1}{D_{\ell}^{2}(t)} + B_{\ell}^{2}(t)$$

since, as we have explained,  $D_0(t)$  and  $B_0(t)$  must be orthogonal. This expression is obviously a minimum for  $B_{\ell}(t) = 0$ , whence it follows that for the ideal receiver  $L_{\ell}(t) = D_{\ell}(t) / \overline{D_{\ell}^{2}(t)}$ (9-18)

where D (t) is defined by Eq. (9-10).

### 9-4. Means of realizing the ideal receiver

We now show that the receiver which, when the waveform X(t) is received, reproduces the value of the function which minimizes the expression

(9-19) 
$$R = \overline{\left[X(t) - A_p(t)\right]^2}$$

is ideal in the sense formulated in the preceding section. In fact, when a waveform  $F_0(t)$  is transmitted in the absence of noise, we obviously have

$$X(t) = A_{\mathbf{F_0}}(t)$$

and Eq. (9-19) has its least possible value of zero for the case where  $A_F(t)$  and  $A_F(t)$ coincide, and the waveform F(t) reproduced by the receiver is  $F_0(t)$ . Thus, the receiver in question does not introduce errors in the absence of noise. F(t), and therefore R, is a function of the parameters  $\lambda_{\mathbf{f}}$ . We stipulated that the waveform F(t) reproduced by the receiver is to give the minimum value of the expression R. Therefore, the partial derivatives of R with respect to  $\lambda_{\mathbf{k}}$  must vanish. We obtain the condition

derivatives of R with 1997 
$$= -2 \left[ X(t) - A_F(t) \right] D_{\ell}(t) = 0$$
 (9-20)

where

If the received waveform receives a small increment  $\Delta X(t)$ , then, obviously,  $A_{p}(t)$ , P(t)and  $\lambda_{\ell}$  must also recolve increments if the expression for R is again to be a minimum. Suppose the parameters  $\lambda_{R}$  receive the increments  $\Delta\lambda_{R}$ ; then  $\Lambda_{F}(t)$  receives the increment

(9-21) 
$$\Delta A_{F}(t) = \sum_{f=f_{1}}^{g} D_{f}(t) \Delta A_{f} .$$

which means that we have

(9-22) 
$$R = \left[X(t) + \Delta X(t) - A_{F}(t) - \sum_{k=l_{1}}^{l_{2}} D_{\ell}(t) \Delta \lambda\right]^{2}$$

The values of the increments  $\Delta \lambda_{m{g}}$  must be such that the expression R again has a minimum value. Therefore the partial derivatives of R with respect to Δλ must vanish, so that

$$\frac{\partial R}{\partial \Delta \lambda_{\ell}} = -2 \left[ X(t) + \Delta X(t) - A_{r}(t) - \sum_{\ell=\ell_{1}}^{\ell 2} D_{\ell}(t) \Delta \lambda \right] D_{\ell}(t) = 0 .$$

Moreover, taking into account Di. (9-20) and the fact that the Do(t) with different indices are orthogonal, we obtain

$$\overline{\Delta X(t) \ D_{\ell}(t) - D_{\ell}^{2}(t) \ \Delta \lambda_{\ell}} = 0$$

wpence.

(9-23) 
$$\Delta \lambda = \frac{\Delta X(t)D_{\mathcal{D}}(t)}{D_{\mathcal{D}}^{2}(t)}$$

The smaller  $\Delta X(t)$  and  $\Delta \lambda$  g , the more exact Eq. (9-21) is. Letting these quantities go to zero, we arrive at the condition characterized by Eqs. (9-8) and (9-18). Therefore, the receiver which reproduces the waveform F(t) minimizing Eq. (9-19) has no error in the absence of noise, and gives the minimum possible error in the presence of weak noise. Thus, this receiver is ideal in the sense established in Section 9-3.

### 9-5. The error for ideal reception

We now determine the amount of error given by the ideal receiver whom weak fluctuation noise is added to the signal. Suppose a waveform

(9-24) 
$$F_{o}(t) = \sum_{i=1}^{2} \lambda_{o} I_{i}(t)$$

was transmitted. Then, in the absence of noise, the received waveform is  $X(t) = A_{p}(t)$ , and the ideal receiver reproduces the waveform  $F_{0}(t)$  determined by the parameters  $\lambda_{0}f$ . Then the weak noise  $\Psi_{\mu,\nu}(t)$  is added to the signal, the received waveform is changed by an amount  $dX(t) = \Psi_{\mu,\nu}(t)$ , and, according to Eqs. (9-3) and (9-18), the parameters  $\lambda_{f}$ , which characterize the waveform reproduced by the ideal receiver, receive increments

(9-25) 
$$d\lambda_{\ell} = \frac{D_{\ell}(t)dX(t)}{D_{\ell}^{2}(t)} = \frac{D_{\ell}(t)W_{\mu,\nu}(t)}{D_{\ell}^{2}(t)} = \frac{\partial \theta_{\ell}}{\sqrt{2T D_{\ell}^{2}(t)}}$$

It should be noted that the random variables  $\theta_{\ell}$  with different indices are independent, since the D<sub>\(\ella{\ell}\)</sub>(t) with different indices are orthogonal. Thus, the waveform reproduced by the ideal receiver has the form

(9-26) 
$$F(t) = \sum_{\beta=\beta_1}^{2} (\lambda_{0\beta} + d\lambda_{\gamma}) I_{\zeta}(t) = F_0(t) + \sum_{\beta=\beta_1}^{2} \frac{\partial \theta_{\beta} I_{\beta}(t)}{\sqrt{2T D_{\beta}^2(t)}} = F_0(t) + W^*(t)$$

whore

$$W^{*}(t) = \sum_{i=1}^{2} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T p_{2i}^{2}(t)}} (\theta_{2i-1} \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} it + \theta_{2i} \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} it)$$

Comparing this expression with Eq. (D-3), we see that due to the action of the noise which is added to the signal the receiver adds to the transmitted waveform F<sub>0</sub>(t) normal fluctuation noise with an intensity at frequency i/T equal to

fluctuation noise with an intensity at 
$$\frac{1}{p_{2i-1}^2(t)} = \sigma / \sqrt{p_{2i}^2(t)}$$
, (9-27)

whore

$$D_{\ell}(t) = \partial \Lambda_{F}(t)/\partial \lambda_{\ell}$$

We shall henceforth call this normal fluctuation noise the noise at the receiver output. This intensity of the noise at the receiver output is the minimum possible and characterizes the optimum noise immunity for a given modulation system. In the case where  $\sigma^*(i/T)$  does not depend on i, we omit this index and write  $\sigma^*$ .

### 9-6. Brief sumary of chapter 9

We call ideal the receiver which exactly reproduces the transmitted waveform in the absence of noise, and gives the best approximation to the transmitted waveform in the

110

presence of weak noise. The ideal receiver reproduces the waveform F(t) which minimizes the quantity R given by (9-19). When reception is with the ideal receiver and the noise is weak, the reproduced waveform differs from the transmitted waveform by the fluctuation noise with intensity given by Eq. (9-27). In drawing these conclusions, it was assumed that the functions D (t) =  $\partial A_{\mathbf{F}}(t)/\partial \lambda$  are orthogonal for any pair of different indices. and that  $\overline{D_{2i-1}^2(t)} = \overline{D_{2i}^2(t)}$ .

#### CHAPTER 10

### DIRECT MODULATION SYSTEMS

By direct modulation systems we shall understand systems in which the transmitted 10-1. Definition waveform (message) F(t) enters directly as a parameter into the expression for the signal. In this case, we can write the general form of the signal as

a this case, we can write 
$$A_F(t) = A[F(t), t]$$
 • 10-1)

Examples of direct modulation systems are amplitude modulation, where the signal can be written as

$$A_{F}(t) = U_{o} \left[1 + \Sigma F(t)\right] \cos(\omega_{o} t + \phi_{o}) .$$

phase modulation, where the signal can be written as

A<sub>F</sub>(t) = 
$$U_0 \cos[\omega_0 t + mF(t) + \phi_0]$$

A<sub>F</sub>(t) =  $U_0 \cos[\omega_0 t + mF(t) + \phi_0]$ 

Frequency modulation, where the transmitted signal is written as

$$A_{\mathbf{F}}(t) = \mathbf{U}_{\mathbf{0}} \cos \left[ \omega_{\mathbf{0}} t + \mathbf{\Lambda}_{\mathbf{0}} \mathbf{F}(t) dt \right]$$

does not belong to the direct systems in the sense of the terminology of this book. Since the transmitted waveform F(t) appears behind the integral, we shall call this kind of modulation integral modulation. Single sideband transmission is also not a direct system, since in this case also the signal cannot be expressed analytically in terms of the transmitted waveform F(t). In Chapter 11 we shall study pulse modulation systems, which are also not classified as direct systems.

Since by hypothesis the transmitted waveform F(t) can be expressed by Eq. (9-1). 10-2. Derivation of basic formulas

for a direct modulation system we can write the signal as

A<sub>F</sub>(t) = A[F(t), t] = A 
$$\left[\sum_{\ell=\ell_1}^{\ell} \lambda_{\ell} I_{\ell}(t), t\right]$$
.

whence

$$D_{f}(t) = \frac{\partial A_{f}(t)}{\partial \lambda_{f}} = \frac{\partial A_{f}(t)}{\partial F} I_{f}(t) .$$

We also assume that the function  $\left[\partial A_{F}(t)/\partial F\right]^{2}$  contains only sinusoidal components with frequencies greater than  $l_2/T$ , i.e., greater than twice the maximum frequency of the sinusoidal components of the transmitted waveform F(t); this condition is usually satisfied. Then, according to Eq. (2-26), we obtain

(10-2) Then, according to Eq. (2-26), we obtain
$$\frac{\overline{D_{\ell}^{2}(t)} = \overline{\left[\frac{\partial A_{F}(t)}{\partial F}\right]^{2} \cdot 1_{\ell}^{2}(t)} = 0$$

It follows from these equations that the conditions (9-15) which were imposed on the D<sub>ℓ</sub>(t) are satisfied in this case, and we can use Eqs. (9-26) and (9-27). It is a consequence of these equations that, for the kind of modulation system in question, we have at the output of the ideal receiver not only the transmitted waveform F(t), but also normal fluctuation noise added to it. This noise has a uniform spectrum and an intensity which, according to Eq. (10-2), is equal to

according to Eq. (10-2), is equal to
$$\sigma^* = \sigma / \sqrt{\frac{\left|\partial A_{\mathbf{F}}(t)/\partial \mathbf{F}\right|^2}{\left|\partial A_{\mathbf{F}}(t)/\partial \mathbf{F}\right|^2}}$$

It is all right to assume that the noise has the same frequencies as those contained in the waveform F(t), since any other frequencies can be filtered out of the receiver output.

## 10-3. Optimum noise immunity for amplitude and linear modulation

In amplitude modulation the signal can be represented by the expression

In amplitude modulation the signal of 
$$A_F(t) = U_0 \left[1 + MF(t)\right] \cos \left(\omega_0 t + \phi_0\right)$$
.

(10-4)

where M is the coefficient of modulation, since we agreed to assume that  $-1 \le F(t) \le +1$ . It follows from this formula that

It follows from this formula that
$$\frac{\partial A_{F}}{\partial F} = U_{0} N \cos \left(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{0}\right) = 0$$
(10-5)
$$\frac{\partial A_{F}}{\partial F} = U_{0} N \cos \left(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{0}\right) = 0$$

This is a high-frequency waveform with frequency  $\omega_0/2\pi$ , so that the restriction imposed

in Section 10-2 is satisfied. Moreover

$$\frac{1}{\left[\partial A_{F}(t)/\partial F\right]^{2}} = \frac{1}{2} U_{o}^{2} M^{2}$$

so that, as a result of noise, at the output of the ideal receiver we have normal fluctuation noise with intensity

(10-6) 
$$\sigma^* = \sqrt{2} \, \sigma / \, U_0 \, \mathbf{H} \quad \cdot$$

Here, and in what follows, it is assumed that the gain of the receiver is adjusted so that the waveform produced at its output by the signal is F(t). For convenience in comparing this with other methods of modulation, we express  $U_0$  in Eq. (10-6) in terms of the effective value of the signal voltage taken for the cases F(t) = 0 and F(t) = cosult. For F(t) = 0, we obtain

$$u_{eo}^2 = \overline{A^2(0,t)} = \frac{1}{2} u_o^2$$

and for F(t) = cossilt, we obtain

obtain
$$U_{\text{em}}^{2} = \overline{\Lambda^{2}(\cos M t, t)} = \frac{1}{2} U_{0}^{2} (1 + \frac{1}{2} H^{2}) ,$$

whence 
$$\sigma^{*2} = \frac{\sigma^2}{M^2 U_{00}^2} = \frac{(1 + \frac{M^2}{2})\sigma^2}{M^2 U_{000}^2}$$
.

The maximum noise immunity is obtained for N = 1. In this case

(10-8) 
$$\sigma^{*2} = \frac{\sigma^2}{v_{eo}^2} = \frac{3\sigma^2}{2v_{em}^2}$$

For linear modulation, the signal can be written as

For linear modulation, the signal can be written as
$$A_{F}(t) = U_{1} \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{1}) + U_{1}^{MF}(t) \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{0}) \cdot A_{F}(t) = U_{1} \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{1}) + U_{2}^{MF}(t) \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{0}) \cdot A_{F}(t) = U_{1} \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{1}) + U_{2}^{MF}(t) \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{0}) \cdot A_{F}(t) = U_{1} \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{1}) + U_{2}^{MF}(t) \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{0}) \cdot A_{F}(t) = U_{1} \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{1}) + U_{2}^{MF}(t) \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{0}) \cdot A_{F}(t) = U_{1} \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{1}) + U_{2}^{MF}(t) \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{0}) \cdot A_{F}(t) = U_{1} \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{1}) + U_{2}^{MF}(t) \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{0}) \cdot A_{F}(t) = U_{1} \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{1}) + U_{2}^{MF}(t) \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{0}) \cdot A_{F}(t) = U_{1} \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{1}) + U_{2}^{MF}(t) \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{0}) \cdot A_{F}(t) = U_{1} \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{1}) + U_{2}^{MF}(t) \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{0}) \cdot A_{F}(t) = U_{1} \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{1}) + U_{2}^{MF}(t) \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{0}) \cdot A_{F}(t) = U_{1} \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{1}) + U_{2}^{MF}(t) \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{0}) \cdot A_{F}(t) = U_{1} \cos(\omega_{0} t + \beta_{0}) \cdot A_{F}(t) = U_{$$

The amplitude modulation analyzed above, the so called quadrature modulation, and also suppressed carrier transmission using both sidebands are special cases of linear modulation. It is easy to see that Eq. (10-5) is also valid for this kind of modulation, which means that in this case at the output of the ideal receiver, in addition to the transmitted waveform F(t), there is normal fluctuation noise, with intensity given by Eq. (10-6).

10-4. Optimum noise immunity for phase modulation

For phase modulation, the signal can be written as

For phase modulation, the signal of 
$$A_{\mathbf{F}}(t) = U_{\mathbf{Q}} \cos \left[ \omega_{\mathbf{Q}} t + m\mathbf{F}(t) \right]$$
 (10-1.0)

where m is the modulation index. For such a signal, we obtain

$$\partial A_{\mathbf{F}}(t)/\partial \mathbf{F} = -\mathbf{U}_{\mathbf{O}}^{m} \sin[\omega_{\mathbf{O}} t + m\mathbf{F}(t)]$$
.

whence

$$\left[\frac{2A_{F}(t)}{2F}\right]^{2} = \frac{U_{o}^{2} m^{2}}{2} - \frac{U_{o}^{2} m^{2}}{2} \cos\left[2\omega_{o}t + 2mF(t)\right].$$

In the case where  $\omega$  is large enough, this waveform has no low-frequency components, so that the condition (10-2) is satisfied. Moreover, we have

$$\frac{1s \operatorname{fat1s110ds}}{\left[\operatorname{dA}_{F}(t)/\operatorname{dF}\right]^{2}} = \frac{\operatorname{U}_{n}^{2}}{2}$$

which means that, due to the noise, at the output of the ideal receiver we have, in addition to the transmitted waveform F(t), normal fluctuation noise with intensity

For phase modulation, the effective value of the signal equals

$$v_o^2 = L^2(0,t) = \Lambda^2(\cos\Omega t,t) = \frac{1}{2}v_o^2$$

Introducing these values into Eq. (10-11), we obtain

$$\sigma^* = \sigma/\text{pl}_{\theta} \quad \bullet$$

We see that for phase modulation, the optimum noise immunity is as many times greater than the optimum noise immunity for amplitude modulation as m is greater than M. Since for amplitude modulation M cannot be larger than unity, whereas for phase modulation m can be much Croster than unity, we can obtain greater optimum noise immunity for phase modulation than for amplitude modulation.

## 10-5. Noise immunity for amplitude accountation and ordinary reception

We now compare the optimum noise immunity for amplitude modulation (obtained in Section 10-5) with the noise immunity obtained for this kind of transmission when using an ordinary receiver. If before the detector there is a filter which passes the signal frequencies, then at the filter output the noise voltage has the form given by Eq. (B-G), so that the sum voltage acting on the detector equals

so that the sum voltage acting on the tile (10-15) 
$$U_0[1 + kF(t)]\cos \omega_0 t + \sqrt{2} V_{1,n}^{(1)}(t) \cos \omega_0 t + \sqrt{2} V_{1,n}^{(1)}(t) \sin \omega_0 t$$

The amplitude of this waveform equals

The amplitude of this waveform of 
$$U_m = \sqrt{\left\{U_0[1 + kF(t)] + \sqrt{2} W_{1,n}^{1}(t)\right\}^2 + W_{1,n}^{2}(t)}$$
.

If the noise is sufficiently small compared with the signal, then the quantity  $\kappa_{1,n}^{*2}$  can be neglected compared with the square of the term in curly brackets. Then we obtain

(10-15) 
$$U_{m} = U_{0}[1 + 2F(t)] + \sqrt{2} W_{1,n}^{(1)}(t) .$$

If we assume that a linear detector is used at the receiver, then the a. c. component at the detector output is equal to

(10-16) 
$$K[\bar{v}_{0}EF(t) + \sqrt{2} W_{1,n}^{i}(t)]$$
.

If at the receiver we use a synchronous detector, which responds only to the cosine component of the voltage (10-13) applied to the detector, thon this result is exact even for large noise intensity. If the gain of the receiver is chosen so that the waveform at its output is equal to F(t) in the absence of noise, then in the presence of noise, according to Eq. (10-16), the waveform is

(10-17) 
$$F(t) + \frac{\sqrt{z}}{m_0} W_{1,n}^{**}(t) .$$

Since, as shown in Appendix B,  $W_{1,n}^{**}(t)$  is normal fluctuation noise with intensity  $\sigma_n$  then at the receiver output there is added to the transmitted waveform the normal fluctuation noise with intensity

Thus, we see by comparing Eqs. (10-6) and (10-18) that the influence of noise is the same for the real receiver and for the ideal receiver. We can conclude from this that for amplitude modulation, the ordinary receiver with a linear detector provides the optimum noise immunity in the presence of weak noise. Hence, in the case of signals of the form (10-4) and for weak noise, no improvements can give a noise immunity higher than that given by the ordinary receiver with a linear detector.

The same result is also obtained when we investigate other linear modulation systems, e. g., quadrature modulation and two-sideband, suppressed carrier transmission. In these

cases it also turns out that the reception normally used with these methods provides the optimum noise immunity.

## 10-6. Noise immunity for phase modulation and ordinary reception

For phase modulation with the signal given by Eq. (10-10), taking into account added noise, we obtain in the receiver (after the r. f. or i. f. filter) the waveform

(10-19) 
$$U_0 \cos |\omega_0 t + mF(t)| + \sqrt{2} W_{1,n}'(t) \cos \omega_0 t + \sqrt{2} W_{1,n}(t) \sin \omega_0 t$$
.

as follows from Appendix B. To simplify the calculation, we consider only the case where the transmitted waveform is small and mF(t) << 1. In this case, for weak noise, when we can take  $\mathbb{W}_{1,n}^{''}(t) \otimes \mathbb{U}_0$  and  $\mathbb{W}_{1,n}^{'}(t) \otimes \mathbb{U}_0$ , we can represent the sum of the waveforms (10-19) by one waveform

$$U_{m} \cos[\omega_{o}t + \phi(t)]$$
.

where

$$\phi(t) = mF(t) - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{U_0} W_{1,n}(t)$$
.

If this waveform is applied to a discriminator which reacts only to its phase and not to its amplitude, then after the discriminator we obtain the waveform

$$F(t) + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{mU_0} W_{1,n}(t) ,$$

after choosing the gain in the required way. Since, as shown in Appendix B,  $W_{1,n}^{i}(t)$  is normal fluctuation noise with intensity o, then in this case, after the discriminator there is added to the transmitted waveform F(t) the normal fluctuation noise with intensity

Thus, we see by comparing Eqs. (10-11) and (10-20) that the method of reception examined here provides the optimum noise immunity in the presence of weak noise, at least for small modulation indices.

### 30-7. Noise immunity for single-sideband transmission

In this section we study the noise immunity for single-sideband transmission. This

transmission system does not belong to the direct systems, but is discussed here for convenience. We now find the influence of noise for this kind of transmission and reception with the ideal receiver. If the waveform

$$F(t) = \sum_{i=i_1}^{i_2} (\lambda_{2i-1} \sqrt{2} \operatorname{sir} \frac{2\pi}{T} it + \lambda_{2i} \sqrt{2} \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} it)$$

is transmitted, then if the upper sideband is used, the signal has the appearance

is transmitted, then if the upper states 
$$(10-21)$$
  $A_{F}(t) = U_{O} \sum_{i=1}^{2} \left[ \lambda_{2i-1} \sqrt{2} \sin(\frac{2\pi}{1}i + \omega_{O})t + \lambda_{2i} \sqrt{2} \cos(\frac{2\pi}{1}i + \omega_{O})t \right]$ 

where  $\omega_0/2\pi$  is the carrier frequency. From this we obtain

$$D_{2i-1}(t) = U_0 \sqrt{2} \sin(\frac{2\pi}{1}i + \omega_0)t$$

$$p_{2i}(t) = U_0 \sqrt{2} \cos(\frac{2\pi}{1}i + \omega_0)t$$

Therefore

$$\overline{p_{2i-1}^2(t)} = \overline{p_{2i}^2(t)} = v_0^2$$
.

and

$$\overline{D_{i}(t)D_{j}(t)} = 0 \cdot i \neq j \quad \cdot$$

Thus, the general formula (9-27) is applicable to the system in question, so that the noise intensity at the output of the ideal receiver equals

noise intensity at the safety 
$$\sigma^* = \sigma / \sqrt{D_2^2(t)} = \sigma / U_0^2$$
.

We obtain the same noise immunity for reception on the receiver usually used to receive single-sideband transmission.

#### CHAPTER 11

### PULSE MODULATION SYSTEMS

### 11-1. Definition

By pulse modulation systems we shall understand systems in which, instead of continuously transmitting a waveform F(t) using the signal  $\Lambda_F(t)$ , we transmit only the separate instantaneous waveform values

instartaneous waveform various 
$$\dots, F(-2\tau), F(-\tau), F(0), F(\tau), F(2\tau), \dots$$

taken at instants of time separated from one another by the amount  $\tau$ . We achieve the transmission of these instantaneous values by using separate signals (pulses) which follow one another in sequence. In doing this, we can use any of the methods of transmitting separate parameter values discussed in Part III. In this case, the transmitted quantities are the instantaneous values (11-1).

To transmit the instantaneous value F(0), we use a signal  $A(\mu_0,t)$  beginning at t=0, where we have set  $\mu_0$ =F(0). To transmit the instantaneous value  $F(k\tau)$ , we use a similar signal  $A(\mu_k,t-\tau k)$  beginning at t= $\tau k$ , where

$$\mu_{\mathbf{k}} = \mathbf{F}(\mathbf{k}\mathbf{r})$$

Thus, we achieve the transmission of the waveform F(t) by using a signal

(11-3) 
$$A_{F}(t) = \sum_{k=-T/2\tau}^{(T/2\tau)-1} A(\mu_{k}, t-\tau k) .$$

The choice of the limits in this sum results from the fact that all processes studied in this book have to lie in the interval (-T/2,+T/2). We assume, that T is chosen in such a way as to make  $T/2\tau$  an integer.

### 11-2. A way of realizing the pulse modulation system

We now examine a possible way of roalizing the pulse communication system, and explain the basic rolation which makes the system realizable. The means of obtaining the signal pulses in the transmitter is in principle very simple, and can be schematically achieved as follows: At instants of time which are multiples of  $\tau$ , a switch closes a circuit on which there acts an e.m. f. proportional to F(t). Then current pulses with values proportional to the instantaneous values (11-1) flow in this circuit. These current pulses act on a modulator, and change the form of the r. f. pulses sent to the receiver by any of the methods studied in Part III. When the r. f. pulses arrive at the receiver, the instantaneous values (11-1) sent by the transmitter are first restored, and then short pulses proportional to these instantaneous values are produced. These short pulses can be written as

$$F(k\tau) \Phi(t - k\tau)$$

The voltage produced by all these pulses is

(11-4) 
$$(T/2\tau) = 1$$

$$k = -T/2\tau$$

$$F(k\tau) \oint_{\mathbb{R}} (t - k\tau) = 0$$

Here we do not take into consideration a possible constant delay of the pulses at the receiver with respect to the pulses at the transmitter.

We assume that F(t) is a continuous function and that  $\Phi(t) = 0$  for t < 0 and  $t > +\epsilon$ . Then the equation

$$F(k\tau) \oint (t - k\tau) = F(t) \oint (t - k\tau)$$

is walld with arbitrarily great accuracy, if  $\epsilon$  is sufficiently small. In fact,  $\overline{b}(t-k\tau)$ is different from zero only for values of t which lie in an arbitrarily small intorval (kt, kt +  $\epsilon$ ), in which we can assume that F(t) = F(kt). Taking account of this fact, we can write Eq. (11-4) as

(11-5) Eq. (11-4) as
$$(T/2\tau)-1$$

$$F(k\tau) \oint (t-k\tau) = F(t) \int_{k=-T/2\tau}^{(T/2\tau)-1} \oint (t-k\tau) = F(t) \int_{k=-T/2\tau}^{(T/2\tau)-1} f(t-k\tau) = F(t)$$

= 
$$F(t)d_0 + F(t)d_1\cos(\omega_0t+\phi_1) + F(t)d_2\cos(2\omega_0t+\phi_2) + \cdots$$

where  $\omega_0 = 2\pi/\tau$ , and  $d_0$ ,  $d_1$ ,  $d_2$ , ... are cortain constants. The last expression is obtained by expanding the sum

by expanding the sum 
$$(11-6) \qquad \qquad \begin{array}{c} (T/2\tau)-1 \\ \downarrow \\ k=-T/2\tau \end{array}$$

which is a periodic function of  $\tau$ , as a Fourier sories. Lot the highest frequency entering into the waveform F(t) be f obviously, the highest frequency entering into the first term of the series is equal to this quantity. The second term of the series is an amplitude modulated waveform and can be decomposed into sinusoidal components consisting of the carrier and sidebands, where the lowest frequency of a component is obviously  $(\omega_0/2\pi) - f_{max}$ . In the third term, the lowest frequency is obviously  $(2\omega_0/2\pi) - f_{max}$ . and so forth. Suppose that the highest frequency f of the first term is less than the lowest frequency of the remaining terms, i.e.

the lowest frequency of one 
$$f_{\text{max}} < (\omega_0/2\pi) - f_{\text{max}}$$
 (11-7)

(11-8) 
$$(1/\tau) = (\omega_0/2\pi) > 2 f_{\text{max}}$$

Thon, because of the frequency separation, it is clear that the first term of (11-5) can be completely filtered out from the other components, so that we can obtain F(t). Thus, using the method described, i.e., the pulse representation (11-4) with a filter or harmonic analysis, we can reproduce the waveform F(t), if only the frequency of the pulses is greater than twice the maximum frequency entering into the waveform F(t), or, what amounts to the same thing, if the distance T between the pulses is less than half the smallest period of a sinusoidal component of F(t) \*

### 11-3. Optimum noise immunity for the pulse modulation system

We now determine the optimum noise immunity of the pulse modulation system, starting from Eq. (11-3) and the general formula (9-27). We obtain

from Eq. (11-3) and the goldent 
$$\frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2} = \frac{$$

We assume that pulses  $A(\mu_k,t-k\tau)$  with different k do not overlap, so that at any instant of time t only one of the terms of the sum (11-10) can differ from zero. In this case, the separate terms of this sum are orthogonal, and we obtain

(11-11) 
$$\frac{\overline{D_{m}(t)D_{\ell}(t)}}{\overline{D_{m}(t)D_{\ell}(t)}} = \sum_{k=-T/2\tau}^{(T/2\tau)-1} \frac{\overline{[\partial \Lambda(\mu_{k}, t-k\tau)/\partial \mu_{k}]^{2}}}{\overline{[\partial \Lambda(\mu_{k}, t-k\tau)/\partial \mu_{k}]^{2}}} \frac{\partial F(k\tau)}{\partial \lambda_{m}} \frac{\partial F(k\tau)}{\partial \lambda_{\ell}}$$

Loroover, clearly

(11-12) 
$$\overline{\left[\partial A(\mu_{k}, t-k\tau)\right]^{2}} = \overline{\left[\partial A(\mu_{k}, t)/\partial \mu_{k}\right]^{2}} = \overline{A_{\mu}^{12}(\mu, t)} .$$

We shall assume for simplicity that this quentity does not depend on the value of  $\mu$ ; this is the case, e.g., in all the examples analyzed in Part III. In the cases where this

<sup>\*</sup> The reader will recognize the resemblance of the results of this section to the standard sampling theory of Shannon and others. (Translator)

quantity depends on the value of  $\mu_{\rm e}$  the intensity of the noise process at the receiver output will depend on the transmitted waveform F(t), and the calculation of this intersity becomes complicated. However, if in this case we look for the noise intensity at the receiver output for F(t) = 0, then the results of the calculations are valid; we need only replace the expression  $A_{\mu}^{12}(\mu,t)$  by its value for  $\mu$  = 0. Taking account of (11-12),

we obtain
$$\frac{1}{D_{\mathbf{m}}(\mathbf{t})D_{\boldsymbol{\ell}}(\mathbf{t})} = \frac{1}{\Lambda_{\boldsymbol{\mu}}^{1/2}(\boldsymbol{\mu},\mathbf{t})} \sum_{\mathbf{k} = -T/2\tau}^{(T/2\tau)-1} \frac{\partial F(\mathbf{k}\tau)}{\partial \lambda_{\mathbf{m}}} \frac{\partial F(\mathbf{k}\tau)}{\partial \lambda_{\boldsymbol{\ell}}} .$$

Moreover, from Eq. (9-1) we obtain

(11-14) 
$$\frac{\partial F(k\tau)}{\partial \lambda_{2i}} = \sqrt{2} \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} i k\tau$$

$$\frac{\partial F(k\tau)}{\partial \lambda_{2i-1}} = \sqrt{2} \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} i k\tau$$

Substituting these expressions into the sum (11-13), we obtain

Substituting these captures 
$$\frac{\overline{D_{\mathbf{m}}(\mathbf{t})D_{\boldsymbol{\rho}}(\mathbf{t})} = 0 \text{ for } \mathbf{m} \neq \emptyset ,$$

$$\frac{\overline{D_{\mathbf{m}}^{2}(\mathbf{t})} - \frac{1}{\tau} T \overline{A_{\boldsymbol{\mu}}^{*2}(\boldsymbol{\mu}, \mathbf{t})} .$$

Thus, according to Eq. (9-27), at the output of the ideal receiver, in addition to the reproduced waveform F(t), we obtain fluctuation noise added to it, with a spectrum equal to

equal to 
$$\sigma^* = \frac{\sigma \sqrt{\tau}}{\sqrt{T A_{\mu}^{*2}(\mu_{\bullet} t)}}$$

We know from Section 6-6 that when a parameter  $\mu$  is transmitted using the signal  $A(\mu_s t)_s$ we obtain the least possible mean square error  $\delta_{mm}$ , given by Eq. (6-40), whom reception is with an ideal receiver. It follows from the form of these equations that the noise intensity at the receiver output can be expressed as

intensity at one 
$$\sigma^{*2} = 2\tau \delta_{\text{ran}}^2$$
 (11-17)

We see that the normal fluctuation noise which the added noise produces at the output of the ideal receiver has uniform intensity, just as in the case of the direct modulation

nothods. The intensity of this noise becomes larger when the minimum mean square error  $\delta_{mm}$  for transmission of the instantaneous values  $F(k\tau)$  of the transmitted waveform becomes larger. Thus, the problem of raising the optimum noise immunity for the pulse modulation system reduces to decreasing the minimum mean square error obtained in transmitting the instantaneous values. All that was said about this in Part III is applicable in the present caso. By decreasing t, i.e., by decreasing the number of signal pulses, we can decrease  $\sigma^*$ , but the average signal power is thereby increased.

In what follows, we shall need to know the effective value  $U_{00}$  of the signal when F(t) = 0, which for the pulse modulation system is given by

In what follows:

$$F(t) = 0, \text{ which for the pulse modulation system is given by}$$

$$F(t) = 0, \text{ which for the pulse modulation system is given by}$$

$$\left(\frac{T}{2\tau} - \frac{1}{A^2(0, t-k\tau)}\right)^2 = \frac{T}{A^2(0, t-k\tau)} = \frac{1}{\tau} T A^2(0, t),$$

$$\left(\frac{T}{2\tau} - \frac{1}{A^2(0, t-k\tau)}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{\kappa} T A^2(0, t-k\tau)$$

$$\left(\frac{T}{2\tau} - \frac{1}{A^2(0, t-k\tau)}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{\kappa} T A^2(0, t-k\tau)$$

$$\left(\frac{T}{2\tau} - \frac{1}{A^2(0, t-k\tau)}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{\kappa} T A^2(0, t-k\tau)$$

$$\left(\frac{T}{2\tau} - \frac{1}{A^2(0, t-k\tau)}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{\kappa} T A^2(0, t-k\tau)$$

$$\left(\frac{T}{2\tau} - \frac{1}{A^2(0, t-k\tau)}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{\kappa} T A^2(0, t-k\tau)$$

$$\left(\frac{T}{2\tau} - \frac{1}{A^2(0, t-k\tau)}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{\kappa} T A^2(0, t-k\tau)$$

$$\left(\frac{T}{2\tau} - \frac{1}{A^2(0, t-k\tau)}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{\kappa} T A^2(0, t-k\tau)$$

$$\left(\frac{T}{2\tau} - \frac{1}{A^2(0, t-k\tau)}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{\kappa} T A^2(0, t-k\tau)$$

$$\left(\frac{T}{2\tau} - \frac{1}{A^2(0, t-k\tau)}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{\kappa} T A^2(0, t-k\tau)$$

$$\left(\frac{T}{2\tau} - \frac{1}{A^2(0, t-k\tau)}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{\kappa} T A^2(0, t-k\tau)$$

$$\left(\frac{T}{2\tau} - \frac{1}{A^2(0, t-k\tau)}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{\kappa} T A^2(0, t-k\tau)$$

$$\left(\frac{T}{2\tau} - \frac{1}{A^2(0, t-k\tau)}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{\kappa} T A^2(0, t-k\tau)$$

$$\left(\frac{T}{2\tau} - \frac{1}{A^2(0, t-k\tau)}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{\kappa} T A^2(0, t-k\tau)$$

$$\left(\frac{T}{2\tau} - \frac{1}{A^2(0, t-k\tau)}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{\kappa} T A^2(0, t-k\tau)$$

$$\left(\frac{T}{2\tau} - \frac{1}{A^2(0, t-k\tau)}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{\kappa} T A^2(0, t-k\tau)$$

according to Eq. (11-3). Here we used the fact that the waveforms of the separate pulses do not overlap, and are therefore orthogonal as this implies.

# 11-4. Noise immunity of the roceiver analyzed in section 11-2

In this section we investigate the noise immunity of the pulse modulation receiver which has the principle of operation studied in Section 11-2, and we compare this noise immunity with the optimum noise immunity. In doing this, we assume that the first part of the receiver in question, which reproduces the instantaneous values from the received signal, operates ideally. In Section 6-5, it was shown that when weak noise is added to the signal, the transmitted quantities are reproduced by the ideal receiver with errors which in the given case, according to Eqs. (5-28), (6-36) and (5-38), are for the k'th pulse equal to

pulse equal to 
$$\delta_{k} = \overline{L_{k}(t)}_{\mu,\nu}(t) = \delta_{jan} k$$
(11-19)

where

$$L_{\mathbf{k}}(t) = \Lambda_{\mathbf{\mu}}^{\dagger}(\mu_{\bullet}t - k\tau) / \overline{\Lambda_{\mathbf{\mu}}^{\dagger 2}(\mu_{\bullet}t - k\tau)}$$

 $\theta_k$  is a normal random variable, and

$$\delta_{\text{max}} = \sigma / \sqrt{2T \, A_{\mu}^{12} (\mu_{\bullet} t - k\tau)}$$

is the mean square error with the ideal receiver. Since the pulses which are used to transmit the various instantaneous values are by hypothesis non-overlapping, the Lk(t) with different indices are nutually orthogonal. Therefore, according to (2-60) and (2-61), the  $\theta_k$  are mutually independent. Moreover, since we assumed in Section 11-3 that  $A_{\mu}^{*2}(\mu_*t-k\tau)$  does not depend on  $\mu_*$  we find that the quantities  $\overline{L_k^2(t)}$  and therefore also δ do not depend on μ.

Due to the action of noise, the receiver reproduces the values  $F(k\tau) + \delta_{mn} \theta_k$  instead of the instantaneous values F(kt). According to Section 11-2, in order to use these values to restore the waveform F(t), we form a system of short pulses, which in this case has the form

$$(11-20) \sum_{k=-T/2\tau}^{(T/2\tau)-1} [F(k\tau) + \delta_{mn} \theta_{k}] \tilde{\phi}(t-k\tau) = \sum_{k=-T/2\tau}^{(T/2\tau)-1} F(k\tau) \tilde{\phi}(t-k\tau) + \delta_{mn} \sum_{k=-T/2\tau}^{(T/2\tau)-1} \theta_{k} \tilde{\phi}(t-k\tau) .$$

If in this expression we leave only oscillations with frequencies less than 1/2r, then, as shown in Section 11-2, the first term of this expression equals the quantity def(t), where d is some constant. We now show that under these conditions, the second term is normal fluctuation noise with intensity equal to

(11-21) 
$$\sqrt{2\tau} \delta_{mn} d_{o}$$

for the frequencies from 0 to 1/27. We first find the cosine component of the second term at frequency n/T; it equals

rm at frequency n/T; it equals
$$C_{n} = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \delta_{mm} \sum_{k = -T/2\tau}^{(T/2\tau) - 1} \Theta_{k}^{\frac{1}{2}(t-k\tau)\cos\frac{2\pi}{T}} \text{ ntdt} = \frac{2\delta_{mm}}{T} \sum_{k = -T/2\tau}^{(T/2\tau) - 1} \Theta_{k} \int_{-T/2}^{\frac{1}{2}(t-k\tau)\cos\frac{2\pi}{T}} \text{ ntdt} .$$

Since  $\Phi(t-k\tau)$  is different from zero only in the immediate neighborhood of  $t=k\tau$ , we have

+T/2
$$\int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \Phi(t-k\tau) \cos^{2\pi} nt \ dt = 0 \cos^{2\pi} nk\tau$$

so that

$$C_{n} = \frac{2\delta_{min}}{T} \stackrel{(\Gamma/2\tau)-1}{a} = \sum_{k=-\Gamma/2\tau} \theta_{k} \cos^{2w} nk\tau \quad .$$

According to Eq. (2-74), taking into consideration the fact that the  $\theta_k$  are independent normal random variables, we obtain

$$c_{n} = \frac{2\delta_{nom}}{T} \alpha \sqrt{T/2\tau} \, e_{cn}$$

where 9 is a normal random variable, inasmuch as

$$\sum_{k=-T/2\tau}^{(T/2\tau)-1} \cos^2 \frac{2\pi}{T} nk\tau = \sum_{k=-T/2\tau}^{(T/2\tau)-1} (\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \cos \frac{4\pi}{T} nk\tau) = \frac{T}{2\tau} .$$

since the sum of cosines is zero for  $n/T < 1/2\tau$ . In the same way, the amplitude of the sine component at frequency n/T is equal to

(11-24) 
$$S_{n} = \frac{2\delta_{nm}}{T} \propto \sqrt{T/2\tau} \quad \theta_{gn} \quad .$$

Using Section 2-5, it is not hard to show that the random variables  $\theta_{\text{ol}}$ ,  $\theta_{\text{sl}}$ ,  $\theta_{\text{o2}}$ ,  $\theta_{\text{s2}}$ , ... are mutually independent.

We now find the quantity d which is the constant component of the series (11-6). It equals

(11-25) 
$$d_{0} = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} \sum_{k=-T/2\tau}^{(T/2\tau)-1} \oint_{-T/2\tau} (t-k\tau) dt = \frac{1}{T} \frac{T}{\tau} \alpha .$$

whence  $Q = \tau d_0$ . Bearing in mind all that has been said, and retaining in the second term of the waveform (11-20) only components with frequencies less than  $1/2\tau$ , we obtain the waveform

(11-26) 
$$W_{1,(T/2\tau)-1}(t) = \delta_{mn} d_0 \sqrt{2\tau/T} \sum_{n=1}^{(T/2\tau)-1} (\Theta_{cn} \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} nt + \Theta_{cn} \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} nt)$$
.

which, as follows from a comparison with Eq. (2-5), is the normal fluctuation noise with the constant intensity equal to (11-21), as was to be proved.

If now we choose the gain of the receiver in such a way as to make F(t) the waveform

at its output in the absence of noise, then, clearly, the additional waveform which is added to the output waveform in the presence of noise is the normal fluctuation process with intensity

$$\sigma^{*} = \sqrt{2\tau} \quad \delta_{\text{min}}$$

Comparing this result with that obtained in Section 11-3 for the optimum noise immunity, we arrive at the conclusion that the means of reception analyzed in Section 11-2 provides the optimum noise immunity, if in it we use the ideal receiver to reproduce the instantaneous transmitted values. In the case where a nonideal receiver is used for this purpose, the mean square error  $\delta_{m}$  in reproducing the instantaneous values is larger than  $\delta_{mn}$ , and the intensity of the noise at the receiver output is increased by the same amount as compared with the ideal case.

### 11-5. Optimum noise immunity for pulse amplitude modulation

For pulse amplitude modulation the separate pulses are given by Eq. (7-1). According to Eqs. (7-2) and (11-17), the noise intensity at the output of the ideal receivor is  $\sigma^{*2} = \frac{\tau \sigma^2}{\tau B^2(t)}$ (11-28)

For convenience in comparing this with other kinds of modulation, we replace  $\overline{B^2(t)}$  in this formula by the offective value of the signal. According to Eqs. (7-1) and (11-19),

we obtain
$$U_{eo}^{2} = \frac{TA^{2}(0,t)}{\tau} = \frac{TB^{2}(t)}{\tau}$$

Substituting this quantity in Eq. (11-28), we obtain

(11-30) 
$$\sigma^* = \sigma / U_{eo}$$

We now compare this value of the intensity of the noise process at the output of the ideal receivor with the same quantity for ordinary amplitude modulation, discussed in Section 10-3 and characterized by Eq. (10-9). As the comparison shows, the noise intensity at the output, and therefore the optimen noise immunity, of the two systems is the same. We saw in Section 10-5 that the optimum noise immunity for smplitude

modulation in the presence of weak noise can be realized using the ordinary receiver. Therefore, the pulse amplitude modulation system cannot provide better noise protection for the same average signal power than ordinary amplitude modulation, regardless of the receiver, at least for weak noise and under the conditions for which the method of reception described in Section 10-5 is realizable.

### 11-6. Optimum noise immunity for pulse time modulation

Let the signal in this case be given by Eq. (7-9). According to Eqs. (7-11) and (11-17), the noise intensity at the output of the ideal receiver is equal to

(11-31) 
$$\sigma^{*2} = \frac{24\pi\sigma^2}{\pi r_0^2 \text{dlu}_0^2}$$

We now express this quantity in terms of  $U_{e0}^2$ , using Eq. (11-18). In this case

$$T \overline{A^2(\mu,t)} = \frac{\pi}{2 \sqrt{L}} U_0^2$$

whence

whence 
$$v_{\text{em}}^2 = v_{\text{eo}}^2 = v_{\text{e}}^2 = \frac{\pi v_{\text{o}}^2}{2 \mathcal{J}_{\tau}}$$

Taking account of this value, we obtain

(11-33) 
$$\sigma^{*2} = \frac{12\sigma^2}{il^2 \tau_0^2 v_0^2}$$

for the case of pulse time modulation. It is clear that the noise immunity increases when we increase the time shift  $\tau_0$  of the modulated pulses. Since this time cannot exceed  $\tau$ , we have  $au_0 < au < 1/2f_m$ , where  $f_m$  is the maximum frequency of the transmitted waveform. We give  $\tau_0$  its maximum possible value by setting  $\tau_0 = 1/2f_m$ . In practice,  $au_{o}$  is always somewhat less than this value, so that for this value of  $au_{o}$  we obtain a somewhat larger value of the noise immunity, which, according to Eq. (11-33) is deter-

minod by the quantity (11-34) 
$$\sigma^{*2} = \frac{48f_{m}^{2}\sigma^{2}}{\sqrt{1.2}v_{e}^{2}} = \frac{12}{\pi^{2}}(2\pi f_{m}/\Omega)^{2} \frac{\sigma^{2}}{v_{e}^{2}} = 1.21 (2\pi f_{m}/\Omega)^{2} \frac{\sigma^{2}}{v_{e}^{2}}$$

The quantity (2 of  $_{m}/\Omega$ ) shows how many times smaller the bandwidth 2 f which the signal occupies for ordinary amplitude modulation is than the bandwidth  $\ell\ell/\pi$  it occupies for

pulse time modulation. Comparing this formula with Eq. (10-8) which characterizes ordinary amplitude modulation, we see that the noise intensity at the output of the ideal receiver for pulse time modulation is approximately as many times less than that for amplitude modulation, as the bandwidth occupied by pulse time modulation is greater than that occupied by amplitude modulation. According to Eq. (2-57), for pulse time modulation with bandwidth 0 to  $f_{m^0}$  the effective value of the noise voltage at the output of the ideal receiver is

ideal receiver is
$$\sqrt{\frac{2\pi f^{3/2}}{E N_{1_{\circ}}^{2}(T/2\tau)-1}(t)} = \sigma^{*} \sqrt{f_{m}} = 1.1 \frac{2\pi f^{3/2}}{\int L} \frac{\sigma}{V_{e}}$$

11-7. Optimum noise immunity for pulse frequency modulation

For this kind of modulation, the pulses are given by Eq. (7-37). According to Eq. (7-40), the noise intensity at the output of the ideal receiver is

(11-36) 
$$\sigma^{*2} = \frac{24\tau\sigma^2}{\Omega^2 v_0^2 \tau_0^3}.$$

By Eqs. (7-39) and (11-18), the offective value of the signal waveform is in this case

$$v_{eo}^2 = v_{em}^2 = v_{e}^2 = \frac{v_{o}^2 \tau_{o}}{2\tau}$$

sinco

$$T \overline{\Lambda^{2}(\mu,t)} = \frac{1}{2} U_{0}^{2} \tau_{0}$$
.

Substituting this quantity in Eq. (11-36), we obtain

(11-37) 
$$\sigma^{*2} = \frac{12\sigma^2}{i \int_{-2}^{2} \tau_0^2 U_0^2}$$

Comparing this formula with 51. (11-33), we see that they are completely identical. In both formulas  $N/\pi$  is approximately the bandwidth occupied by the signal, and  $\tau_0$  is approximately the time required to transmit one pulse. Therefore, all conclusions concerning this modulation system coincide with the conclusions concerning the pulse time modulation analyzed in the preceding section. In this case, we must also try to make  $au_0$ as large a quantity as possible. As before, the maximum possible value is  $au_0= au_0$ (11-34) and the deductions from it are also valid in this case. Of course, the methods

of combined modulation discussed in Section 7-9 are also available to raise the noise immunity in the presence of weak noise.

#### CHAPTER 12

### INTEGRAL MODULATION SYSTEMS

### 12-1. Definition

Systems such that the integral f F(t) dt, rather than the transmitted waveform F(t) itsolf, enters the analytic expression for the signal, will be called integral modulation systems. A well known example of such modulation is frequency modulation, where the frequency of the transmitted waveform can be written as

$$\omega = \omega_0 + MF(t)$$
.

where IL is the frequency deviation and F(t) is the transmitted waveform, the value of which by hypothesis varies within the range ±1. As is well known, the analytic expression for the signal with this frequency is

(12-1) 
$$A_{F}(t) = U_{o} \cos \left[\omega_{o} t + \iota \Omega \right] \cdot$$

It is apparent from this formula that this modulation differs from phase modulation, given by Eq. (10-10), in that it contains the integral of the function instead of the function itself. It is clear that very many different types of integral modulation can be produced. To do so, it is enough to replace F(t) in any formula for the signal in direct modulation by the integral of F(t).

### 12-2. Optimum noise immunity for integral modulation systems

For the integral modulation system, the signal can be written as

For the integral modulation 
$$\Lambda_{\underline{F}}(t) = \Lambda [ f(t) dt, t ] = \Lambda [ f(t) dt, t ]$$
 (12-2)

whore

$$\Psi = \int F(t) dt = \int_{i=i_1}^{i_2} (\lambda_{2i-1} \sqrt{z} \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} it + \lambda_{2i} \sqrt{z} \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} it) dt =$$

(12-3) 
$$= \sum_{i=i_1}^{i_2} \left( -\frac{T\lambda_{2i-1}}{2\pi i} \sqrt{2} \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} it + \frac{T\lambda_{2i}}{2\pi i} \sqrt{2} \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} it \right) .$$

128

It follows from this that

$$D_{\rho}(t) = \frac{\partial \lambda_{\rho}(t)}{\partial \lambda_{\rho}} = \frac{\partial \lambda_{\rho}(t)}{\partial \lambda_{\rho}(t)} \frac{\partial \lambda_{\rho}}{\partial \lambda_{\rho}}$$

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \lambda_{2i-1}} = -\frac{T}{2\pi i} \sqrt{2} \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} it$$

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \lambda_{2i}} = \frac{T}{2\pi i} \sqrt{z} \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} it$$

Therefore, as in Section 10-2

$$\frac{10-2}{p_{2i-1}^2(t)} = \frac{1}{p_{2i}^2(t)} = (T/2\pi i)^2 \left[\frac{\partial A_p(t)}{\partial \Psi}\right]^2$$

and

$$\overline{D_k(t)D_{\ell}(t)} = 0, k \neq \ell.$$

In proving these statements, it was assumed that the function  $[\partial A_p(t)/\partial \Psi]^2$  contains only sinusoidal components with frequencies higher than  $2i_2/T$ , i.e., higher than twice the maximum frequency contained in the transmitted waveform F(t). Thus, the conditions (9-15) are valid for integral modulation systems, and we can use Eq. (9-27). Therefore, for these systems the noise intensity at the output of the ideal receiver is

(12-4) 
$$\sigma^*(i/r) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{\left[\partial A_p(t)/\partial \frac{r}{2}\right]^2}} \frac{2\pi i}{r} ,$$

so that the moise intensity at frequency f is

so that the noise intensity at 
$$12-5$$
  $\sigma^*(f) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{\left[\partial A_F(t)/\partial Y\right]^2}}$   $2\pi f$  .

As we see from this formula, in integral modulation systems the noise intensity at the output of the ideal receiver increases in proportion to the frequency, as opposed to the modulation systems studied earlier. According to Eq. (D-9), the effective value of the noise process at the output is

woise process at the output ID
$$\sqrt{\frac{1}{8} \sqrt{\frac{2}{1}}} = \sqrt{\int_{0}^{\infty} \sigma^{\frac{2}{1}}(f) df} = \frac{2\pi\sigma}{\sqrt{\left[\frac{2}{1} A_{\frac{1}{1}}(f) / \frac{2}{1}\right]^{2}}} \sqrt{\frac{f_{\frac{1}{1}}}{\left[\frac{2}{1} A_{\frac{1}{1}}(f) / \frac{2}{1}\right]^{2}}}$$
(12-6)
$$= \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{5}} \sigma f_{\frac{1}{1}}^{3/2} / \sqrt{\left[\frac{2}{1} A_{\frac{1}{1}}(f) / \frac{2}{1}\right]^{2}}$$

#### 12-3. Optimum noise immunity for frequency modulation

We now apply the formula obtained in the preceding section to the case of frequency modulation. For frequency modulation, the signal can be represented by Eq. (12-1). Thus, applying the notation of the preceding section, we obtain

$$A_{F}(t) = U_{o} \cos(\omega_{o}t + i\Omega \Psi)$$
,

$$\partial A_{\mathbf{P}}(t)/\partial \mathbf{Y} = -\mathbf{U}_{\mathbf{0}} \mathbf{L} \sin(\omega_{\mathbf{0}} t + i \mathbf{L} \mathbf{Y})$$
.

As can be seen, the square of the last waveform does not contain any low frequencies if  $\omega_0$  is sufficiently large. Moreover

$$\frac{|\partial A_{F}(t)/\partial \Psi|^{2}}{|\partial A_{F}(t)/\partial \Psi|^{2}} = \frac{1}{2} U_{o}^{2} \Lambda^{2}$$

whence, according to Eq. (12-5), we have

(12-7) 
$$\sigma^*(f) = \frac{\sqrt{z} \sigma}{U_0} \frac{2\pi f}{i\Omega}$$

For this kind of modulation, the effective value of the signal equals

$$v_e^2 = v_{eo}^2 = v_{em}^2 = \frac{1}{2}v_o^2$$
.

Therefore, in this case

(12-8) 
$$\sigma^*(f) = \frac{2\pi f}{M} \frac{\sigma}{U} .$$

According to Eq. (12-6), for this modulation the effective noise voltage at the output of the ideal receiver is

(12-9) 
$$\sqrt{\frac{E W^{2}(t)}{E W^{2}(t)}} = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{3}} \frac{r^{3/2}}{\ln t} \frac{\sigma}{v_{e}} = 0.578 \frac{2\pi r^{3/2}}{\ln t} \frac{\sigma}{v_{e}}$$

Comparing this kind of modulation with pulse time modulation and pulse frequency modulation, with optimum noise immunity given by Eq. (11-34), we see that at the highest frequency f<sub>m</sub> the noise intensity at the output of the ideal receiver is approximately the same in both cases. In the case of frequency rodulation, when the frequency is decreased, the noise intensity decreases, as opposed to the pulse systems, where it remains constant. This gives approximately twice as small a value of the effective noise voltage at the

output of the ideal receiver for frequency rodulation as compared with pulse modulation, as follows by comparing Eqs. (11-35) and (12-9). A comparison of the noise immunity of the ideal receiver with the noise immunity of the real receiver which is usually used shows that the noise immunities are the same for frequer resolutation in the presence of weak poise.

#### CHAPTER 13

EVALUATION OF THE INFLUENCE OF STRONG NOISE ON THE

### TRANSMISSION OF WAVEFORDS

### 13-1. General considerations

In this chapter, we show how to evaluate the optimum roise immunity of systems which are used to transmit waveforms, in the presence of strong noise. A precise evaluation of the influence of noise in this case is often very difficult. The noise process at the receiver output may not even be normal fluctuation noise, and may depend on the transmitted waveform. However, it is not hard to obtain an approximate evaluation of the influence of strong noise by using the maximum discrimination of the transmitted waveforms, which cannot be exceeded with any receiver, for the given means of transmission and the given moise intensity.

### 13-2. Enximum discrimination of transmitted waveforms

Let a waveform F1(t) (a sound wave, say) be transmitted; in this case the transmitted signal is  $\Lambda_{F_1}(t)$ . Let the noise  $\mu_{\mu,\nu}(t)$  be added to this signal, with the result that the receiver does not reproduce the waveform F1(t) at its output, but another waveform, which is a distortion of  $F_1(t)$  produced by the noise. If the waveform  $F_2(t)$  was transmitted instead of F1(t), then the transmitted signal would be AF2 (t). In this case, due to the action of noise, the wavefern at the receiver would look like a porturbed version of the wavoform F2(t). The amount of distortion produced by the noise can be evaluated as the probability that by using the waveform reproduced by the receiver (a sound were in this case) we correctly determine whether F1(t) or F2(t) was sont. This probability can be obtained experimentally, e.g., by using the following articulation experiment, which

is suitable for the case of telephony: Sometimes let the sound waveform  $F_1(t)$  be sent, and other times let the waveform  $F_2(t)$  be sent, in an order which is unknown at the receiving end, but in such a way that on the average both waveforms are sent equally often. Suppose that at the receiving end a listener writes down each time which waveform, in his opinion, was sent. Obviously, in some cases he will write down the correct answer, and in other cases the incorrect answer, as can be ascertained subsequently. Then, for a sufficiently large number of trisls, the number of correctly chosen sound waveforms divided by the total number of transmitted sound waveforms equals the desired probability.

The maximum possible value of this protability for a given means of transmission, i.c., for given signals A<sub>F1</sub>(t) and A<sub>F2</sub>(t), can easily be found theoretically. In fact, in Chaptor 4 we found the probability that the ideal receiver correctly decides which of two signals known in advance was sont, when noise is added to the signal. Also we showed that no other means of reception can provide a larger value of this probability. If we correctly determine which of two waveforms  $F_1(t)$  and  $F_2(t)$  was sent, by using the waveform at the receiver output, we thereby determine which of the signals  $A_1(t)$  and A2(t) was sent. Therefore, the probability that we correctly decide which of the waveforms F1(t) or F2(t) was sent, by using the waveform at the receiver output, which is distorted by noise, cannot be greater than the probability that the ideal receiver correctly discriminates between the signals  $\Lambda_{F_1}(t)$  and  $\Lambda_{F_2}(t)$ . According to Section 4-1, this latter probability is equal to

$$1 - P_{g} = 1 - V(\alpha) ,$$

where

where
$$\alpha = \frac{1}{\sigma} \sqrt{\frac{T}{2} \left[ \Lambda_{F_1}(t) - \Lambda_{F_2}(t) \right]^2} \quad .$$

In this way, we can evaluate the discrimination which cannot be exceeded, given the waveform, the modulation method, and the noise intensity. By this means, it is clear that we can also determine in many cases how close the given receiver is to being ideal in the presence of strong noise. In fact, if it turns out that the probability determined

experimentally by the "articulation" experiment described above is close to the probability given by Eq. (13-1), this means that for the given kind of transmission, the given receiver provides almost the maximum protection against strong fluctuation noise. This also means that other receivers cannot provide more protection against this noise, when the waveforms  $F_1(t)$  and  $F_2(t)$  are transmitted. Clearly, the value of the method described can be determined only after applying it in practice.

In the method studied here, we use waveforms which can take on two discrete values.

Of course, one can also develop a method of evaluation which uses many discrete waveforms.

#### 13-3. Maximum discrimination for phase modulation

To illustrate the method discussed in the preceding section, we apply it to the special case of phase modulation. In order to test the influence of noise, we transmit either the waveform

(13-3) 
$$F_1(t) = \sin t \cdot \int_0^t dt + \int_0^t dt$$

or the absence of any waveform, i.e.

(15-4) 
$$F_2(t) = 0$$
.

Suppose we study phase modulation, for which the transmitted signal equals

(13-5) 
$$A_{F}(t) = U_{cos}[\omega_{c}t + mF(t)]$$

Then, in our case, we obtain

(13-6) 
$$A_{F_{s}}(t) = U_{o}\cos[\omega_{o}t + m \sin\Omega t], \text{ for } -\tau_{o}/2 \le t \le \tau_{o}/2.$$

(13-7) 
$$A_{F_1}(t) = U_0 \cos \omega_0 t$$
, for  $t < -\tau_0/2$  and  $t > \tau_0/2$ .

and

(13-8) 
$$A_{F_2}(t) = U_0 \cos \omega_0 t$$
.

Substituting those expressions into (13-2), and assuming for simplicity that  $\omega_0$ >> Land that il  $\tau_0/\pi$  is an integer, we obtain

(15-9) 
$$\alpha^2 = (Q^2/\sigma^2) (1 - J_o(m))$$

where J (m) is the Bessel function of order zero with argument m, and

(13-10) 
$$Q^2 = \frac{1}{2} U_0^2 \tau_0 .$$

Substituting this value of a into Eq. (13-1), we obtain an upper bound for the probability of correct discrimination of the waveforms  $F_1(t)$  and  $F_2(t)$  at the receiver output, in the presence of noise of intensity  $\sigma$ .

In Figure 13-1, the quantity m is plotted as abscissa, and curve 1 gives  $1 - J_0(m)$  as the ordinate. The latter expression completely determines the quantity V(a) appearing in Eq. (13-1), if we specify the value of  $Q/\sigma$ . Therefore, we can also plot the value of V(a) along the ordinate axis in the figure, if we specify  $Q/\sigma$ ; this has been done for the values  $Q/\sigma = 1$ , 2, 3, 4, 6. As the figure shows, the quantity V(a) increases when M > 4. Clearly, the reason for this is the following: For such large values of M, in order for there to be an error in interpreting the waveform F(t), at the time when this waveform is expected, the noise waveform must take on a value so large that phase modulation no longer provides good protection against the noise. For such a large noise waveform, it is clear that the transmitted waveforms cannot be properly distinguished in the midst of the noise at the receiver output, regardless of the value of the modulation index M.

### 13-4. Maximum discrimination for weak noise

To clarify the special features which strong noise introduces, we now determine the maximum discrimination, starting from the theory derived in provious chapters for the case of weak noise. When the waveform  $F_1(t)$  is transmitted in the presence of weak noise, then at the output of the ideal receiver we obtain the waveform

(13-11) 
$$F_1(t) + \eta^*(t)$$

and when F2(t) is transmitted, we obtain the waveform

(13-12) 
$$F_2(t) + W^*(t)$$

where  $W^*(t)$  is the normal fluctuation noise with the intensity  $\sigma^*$  given by Eq. (9-27). We confine ourselves to the case where  $\sigma^*$  does not depend on the frequency, as is always the case except for integral modulation. As shown in Section 4-1, the probability that we correctly determine which of the waveforms  $F_1(t)$  or  $F_2(t)$  was transmitted, using the functions (13-11) and (13-12) and the ideal indicator (ideal ear), is equal to

(13-13) 
$$1 - P_E = 1 - V(\alpha^*) ,$$



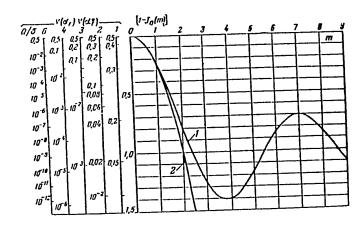


Fig. 13-1. Probability of error for transmission of a sine wave using phase modulation and the ideal receiver, for various  $Q/\sigma$ . Curve 1 – exact value; curve 2 – approximate value obtained by weak noise formula; m – modulation index;  $Q^2$  is defined by Eq.(13-10).

where

$$\alpha^* = \sqrt{\frac{\mathbb{I}[F_2(t)-F_1(t)]^2}{2\sigma^{*2}}}$$

Obviously, according to what was said in Section 13-2, the size of (13-13) cannot be groater than the probability given by Eq. (13-1). If this does not turn out to be the case, it means that the probability (13-13) was improperly calculated, which means that the assumption that the noise is sufficiently weak is not valid. In the next section, we compare this method of ovaluating the maximum discrimination with the general method discussed in Section 13-2, using phase modulation as an example.

# 13-5. Maximum discrimination for woak noise and phase modulation

We now apply what was said in the proceding section to the case of phase modulation, which we studied in Section 13-3. Assuming that the test waveforms  $F_1(t)$  and  $F_2(t)$  are defined as before by Eqs. (13-3) and (13-4), and using Eqs. (13-14) and (10-11), we obtain

(13-3) and (13-4), and using Eqs. (13-17)
$$a^{+2} = \frac{V_0^{2}n^2}{4\sigma^2} + \frac{\tau_0/2}{-\tau_0/2} \sin^2 \Omega t dt = \frac{Q_n^2}{4\sigma^2}.$$

For simplicity, we took  $\int \int \tau_0 / \pi$  equal to an integer, and denoted  $\tau_0 V_0^2 / 2$  by  $Q^2$ . In Figure 13-1, curve 2 gives the dependence of the quantity m2/4 on m. Thus, using this curve and giving different values to the ratio  $Q/\sigma$ , we can determine the quantity  $V(\alpha^*)$ , just as in Section 13-3 we determined the quantity V(a), using curve 1. As we see from the figure, the two curves are close together only when the modulation index m<2. In the case where m>2, the value of V(a) given by curve 1 is much larger than the value  $V(a^*)$  given by curve 2. It follows from this that the quantity (13-13), determined according to the formula derived for weak noise, is incorrect for m>2, which means that the weak noise theory is not applicable in this case. Clearly, this result can be interpreted as follows: As long as the test waveform  $F_1(t)$  gives a small modulation index  $m \leq 2$ , it is masked at the receiver output by noise waveforms which are small enough so that Dise (13-11) and (13-12) are valid. In the case where the test waveform produces a modulation index m>2, it is masked at the receiver output only when the noise waveform is so large at the time when F<sub>1</sub>(t) is transmitted that Eq. (13-13) and the weak noise theory are not valid.

#### APPENDICES

Appendix A. The specific energy of high-frequency waveforms

As is well-known, a high-frequency signal can be represented quite generally as  $A(t) = U_m(t) \cos \left[\omega_0 t + \phi(t)\right] .$ (A-1)

The specific energy of this signal is

$$Q^2 = T \overline{A^2(t)} = T \overline{y_m^2(t) \cos^2[\omega_0 t + \beta(t)]}$$

Now if we assume, as is usually the case, that  $\omega_{0}$  is so large that the frequencies which effectively matter in the expression  $\cos\left[2\omega_{0}t+2\ \phi(t)\right]$  are all higher than the frequencies contained in the function  $U_m^2(t)$ , and that the constant component of  $\cos[2\omega_0 t + g(t)]$  can be set equal to zero for the same reason, then by Eq. (2-26), we obtain

be set equal to zero for one of 
$$Q^2 = T \overline{A^2(t)} = \frac{1}{2} T \overline{U_m^2(t)} = \frac{1}{2} \int_{-T/2}^{+T/2} U_m^2(t) dt$$

Appendix B. Representation of normal fluctuation noise by two amplitude-modulated waves We consider normal fluctuation noise with fequencies from  $\mu/T$  to  $\nu/T$  and constant intensity, and write

Let  $\mathbf{l}_0$  and n be integers. Then the waveform (2-54) can be written as

(E-2) 
$$= \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} \sum_{i=-1}^{n} \left\{ \frac{\theta_{2} \rho_{0} + 2i + 1}{2 \rho_{0} + 2i + 1} \left[ \frac{2\pi}{T} it \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} \rho_{0} t + \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} it \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} \rho_{0} t \right] + \right\}$$

$$+ e_{2\mathbf{Q}_{0}+2i} \left[ \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} it \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} \mathbf{Q}_{0} t - \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} it \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} \mathbf{Q}_{0} t \right] \right\} .$$

Setting  $\frac{2\pi}{T} \frac{1}{2} = \omega_0$  and factoring out cos  $\omega_0$ t and sin  $\omega_0$ t, we obtain

Setting 
$$\frac{1}{T} \cdot \mathbf{l}_0 = \mathbf{l}_0$$
 and  $\mathbf{l}_0 = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{r}} \cdot \sum_{i=-n}^{n} \left( \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - 1 \frac{\sin \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it + \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i \frac{\cos \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it \right) \cos \omega_0 t + \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{r}} \cdot \sum_{i=-n}^{n} \left( \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - 1 \frac{\cos \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it - \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - \frac{\sin \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it \right) \sin \omega_0 t + \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{r}} \cdot \sum_{i=-n}^{n} \left( \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - 1 \frac{\cos \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it - \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - \frac{\sin \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it \right) \sin \omega_0 t + \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{r}} \cdot \sum_{i=-n}^{n} \left( \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - 1 \frac{\cos \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it - \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - \frac{\sin \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it \right) \sin \omega_0 t + \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{r}} \cdot \sum_{i=-n}^{n} \left( \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - 1 \frac{\cos \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it - \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - \frac{\sin \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it \right) \sin \omega_0 t + \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{r}} \cdot \sum_{i=-n}^{n} \left( \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - 1 \frac{\cos \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it - \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - \frac{\sin \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it \right) \sin \omega_0 t + \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{r}} \cdot \sum_{i=-n}^{n} \left( \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - 1 \frac{\cos \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it - \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - \frac{\sin \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it \right) \sin \omega_0 t + \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{r}} \cdot \sum_{i=-n}^{n} \left( \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - 1 \frac{\cos \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it - \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - \frac{\sin \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it \right) \sin \omega_0 t + \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{r}} \cdot \sum_{i=-n}^{n} \left( \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - 1 \frac{\cos \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it - \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - \frac{\sin \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it \right) \sin \omega_0 t + \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{r}} \cdot \sum_{i=-n}^{n} \left( \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - 1 \frac{\cos \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it - \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - \frac{\pi}{T} \cdot it \right) \sin \omega_0 t + \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{r}} \cdot \sum_{i=-n}^{n} \left( \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - 1 \frac{\cos \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it - \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - \frac{\pi}{T} \cdot it \right) \sin \omega_0 t + \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{r}} \cdot \sum_{i=-n}^{n} \left( \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - 1 \frac{\cos \frac{2\pi}{T}}{T} \cdot it - \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - \frac{\pi}{T} \cdot it \right) \sin \omega_0 t + \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{r}} \cdot it + \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{r}} \cdot \sum_{i=-n}^{n} \left( \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - 1 \frac{\theta_2}{2} \mathbf{l}_0 + 2i - \frac{\theta_2}{$ 

Finally, adding terms with the same absolute value of i, we obtain

$$\eta_{\mu,\nu}(t) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left[ (\theta_{2} \ell_{0} + 2i - 1 - \theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i - 1) \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} it + (\theta_{2} \ell_{0} + 2i + \theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i) \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} it \right] \cos \omega_{0} t + (\theta_{2} \ell_{0} + 2i - 1 + \theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i - 1) \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} it + (\theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i - 1 + \theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i - 1) \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} it \right] \sin \omega_{0} t + (\theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i - \theta_{2} \ell_{0} + 2i) \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} it \right] \sin \omega_{0} t + (\theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i - \theta_{2} \ell_{0} + 2i) \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} it \right] \sin \omega_{0} t + (\theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i - \theta_{2} \ell_{0} + 2i) \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} it \right] \sin \omega_{0} t + (\theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i - \theta_{2} \ell_{0} + 2i) \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} it \right] \sin \omega_{0} t + (\theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i - \theta_{2} \ell_{0} + 2i) \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} it \right] \sin \omega_{0} t + (\theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i - \theta_{2} \ell_{0} + 2i) \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} it \right] \sin \omega_{0} t + (\theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i - \theta_{2} \ell_{0} + 2i) \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} it \right] \sin \omega_{0} t + (\theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i - \theta_{2} \ell_{0} + 2i) \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} it \right] \sin \omega_{0} t + (\theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i - \theta_{2} \ell_{0} + 2i) \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} it \right] \sin \omega_{0} t + (\theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i - \theta_{2} \ell_{0} + 2i) \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} it$$

Here we have neglected the terms with i = 0, which is permissible if we take T large enough, since if T is increased while the frequencies  $\mu/T$  and  $\sqrt{T}$  are kept the same, the number of terms will increase, while each term becomes arbitrarily small. We now introduce the notation

$$\theta_{2} \ell_{0} + 2i - 1 - \theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i - 1 = \sqrt{2} \quad \theta_{2i-1}^{1i} \quad .$$

$$\theta_{2} \ell_{0} + 2i - 1 + \theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i - 1 = \sqrt{2} \quad \theta_{2i}^{1i} \quad .$$

$$\theta_{2} \ell_{0} + 2i + \theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i = \sqrt{2} \quad \theta_{2i}^{1i} \quad .$$

$$\theta_{2} \ell_{0} - 2i - \theta_{2} \ell_{0} + 2i = \sqrt{2} \quad \theta_{2i-1}^{1i} \quad .$$

where, according to Section 2-5, the  $\theta_{2i-1}^{1}$ ,  $\theta_{2i-1}^{1}$ ,  $\theta_{2i}^{1}$ ,  $\theta_{2i}^{1}$  are (mutually) independent random variables. Substituting these quantities in (B-4), we obtain

random variables. Substituting these quadratures (B-6) 
$$\begin{array}{ll} \mathbb{V}_{\mu,\nu}(t) = \mathbb{V}_{0}^{-n}, \mathbf{1}_{0}^{+n}(t) = \sqrt{2} \, \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{-n}(t) \sin \omega_{0} t + \sqrt{2} \, \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{-n}(t) \cos \omega_{0} t \\ \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{-n}(t) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} \, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \Theta_{2i-1}^{i} \, \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it + \Theta_{2i}^{i} \, \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it \right) \\ \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{-n}(t) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} \, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \Theta_{2i-1}^{n} \, \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it + \Theta_{2i}^{i} \, \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it \right) \\ \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{-n}(t) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} \, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \Theta_{2i-1}^{n} \, \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it + \Theta_{2i}^{i} \, \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it \right) \\ \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{-n}(t) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} \, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \Theta_{2i-1}^{n} \, \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it + \Theta_{2i}^{i} \, \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it \right) \\ \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{-n}(t) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} \, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \Theta_{2i-1}^{n} \, \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it + \Theta_{2i}^{i} \, \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it \right) \\ \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{-n}(t) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} \, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \Theta_{2i-1}^{n} \, \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it + \Theta_{2i}^{i} \, \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it \right) \\ \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{-n}(t) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} \, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \Theta_{2i-1}^{n} \, \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it + \Theta_{2i}^{i} \, \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it \right) \\ \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{-n}(t) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} \, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \Theta_{2i-1}^{n} \, \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it + \Theta_{2i}^{i} \, \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it \right) \\ \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{-n}(t) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} \, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \Theta_{2i-1}^{n} \, \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it + \Theta_{2i}^{i} \, \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it \right) \\ \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{-n}(t) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} \, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \Theta_{2i-1}^{n} \, \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it + \Theta_{2i}^{i} \, \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it \right) \\ \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{-n}(t) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} \, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \Theta_{2i-1}^{n} \, \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it + \Theta_{2i}^{i} \, \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it \right) \\ \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{-n}(t) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} \, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \Theta_{2i-1}^{n} \, \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it + \Theta_{2i}^{i} \, \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it \right) \\ \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{-n}(t) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} \, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \Theta_{2i-1}^{n} \, \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it + \Theta_{2i}^{i} \, \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it \right) \\ \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{-n}(t) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} \, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \Theta_{2i-1}^{n} \, \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it + \Theta_{2i}^{i} \, \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} \, it \right) \\ \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{-n}(t) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} \, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \Theta_{2i-1}^{n} \, it + \Theta_{2i}^{n} \, it + \Theta_{2i}^{n} \, it \right) \\ \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{-n}(t) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} \, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \Theta_{2i-1}^{n} \, it + \Theta_{2i-1}^{n} \, it + \Theta_{2i-1}^{n} \, it \right) \\ \mathbb{V}_{1,n}^{$$

are independent normal fluctuation processes with frequencies from zero to n/T =  $(\frac{1}{2}-2\mu)/2T$ . The quantity  $\omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T}$   $\frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{2\pi}{T} + \frac{2\pi}{T} + \frac{2\pi}{T} + \mu\right)$  is the mean angular frequency of the process  $W_{\mu,\nu}(t)$ .

Appendix C. The instantaneous value of normal fluctuation noise

We now find the value of normal fluctuation noise with constant intensity at some instant of time t = t1. According to Eqs. (2-54) and (2-74), we have

(C-1) 
$$\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} - \sum_{\ell=\mu}^{T} (\theta_{2\ell-1} \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} \ell t_1 + \theta_{2\ell} \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} \ell t_1) = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{T}} - \sum_{\ell=\mu}^{T} (\sin^2 \frac{2\pi}{T} \ell t_1 + \cos^2 \frac{2\pi}{T} \ell t_1) = \sigma \sqrt{\frac{\nu - \mu + 1}{T}} \theta_1$$

where  $\theta_1$  is a normal random variable. Introducing  $f_{ij} = \sqrt{T}$  and  $f_{ij} = \mu/T$ , the limits of the frequency band of the process under consideration, we find that for large T

$$(c-2) \qquad v_{\mu,\nu}(t_1) = \sigma \sqrt{t_{\nu} - f_{\mu}} \quad \theta_1 .$$

The rms value of  $\tilde{w}_{\mu,\nu}(t_1)$  is  $o\sqrt{f_{\nu}-f_{\mu}}$ , which agrees with (2-57).

Appendix D. Formel fluctuation noise made up of arbitrary pulses

We consider the passage of normal fluctuation noise through a linear system. Let the process  $v_{1,3}(t)$  given by Eqs.  $(2-54)^3$  and (2-27), and consisting of the very short pulses (2-28), act upon the input of the system. This process can be written as

$$W_{1,v}(t) = \sum_{l=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{l}} \left( \theta_{2l-1} \sin \frac{2\pi}{L} l t + \theta_{2l} \cos \frac{2\pi}{L} l t \right),$$

where → can be arbitrarily large, if the pulses are taken to be short enough. The process at the output of the system is

process at the output of the system 19
$$(D-1) \qquad W^{2}(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sigma_{k}(k/T)}{\sqrt{T}} \left\{ \theta_{2k-1} \sin \left[ \frac{2\pi \theta}{T} t + \phi(\frac{1}{T}) \right] + \theta_{2k} \cos \left[ \frac{2\pi}{T} t + \phi(\frac{1}{T}) \right] \right\},$$

where  $k(l/T)\exp[j\phi(l/T)]$  is the complex transfer coefficient of the system at the frequency 1/T. Expanding the sine and cosine terms in this expression, we obtain

quency 
$$l/T$$
. Expanding the sine and cosine terms in that  $O_T$ 

$$V^{\pm}(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{\operatorname{ck}(l/T)}{\sqrt{T}} \left\{ \left[ \begin{array}{c} \theta_{2k-1} \cos \phi(l/T) - \theta_{2k} \sin \phi(l/T) \end{array} \right] \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} l t + \left[ \begin{array}{c} \theta_{2k-1} \sin \phi(l/T) + \theta_{2k} \cos \phi(l/T) \end{array} \right] \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} l t + \left[ \begin{array}{c} \theta_{2k-1} \sin \phi(l/T) + \theta_{2k} \cos \phi(l/T) \end{array} \right] \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} l t \right\}.$$

<sup>\*</sup> The author has in mind the special case of (2-54) corresponding to  $\mu$  = 1. (Translator)

According to Eqs. (2-74) and (2-75), we have

$$\theta_{2\ell-1} \cos \phi(\ell/T) - \theta_{2\ell} \sin \phi(\ell/T) = \sqrt{\cos^2 \phi(\ell/T) + \sin^2 \phi(\ell/T)} \theta_{2\ell-1}^2 = \theta_{2\ell-1}^4$$
 and

$$\theta_{2\ell-1} \sin \phi(\ell/T) + \theta_{2\ell} \cos \phi(\ell/T) = \sqrt{\sin^2 \phi(\ell/T) + \cos^2 \phi(\ell/T)} \theta_{2\ell}^2 = \theta_{2\ell}^2.$$

where  $\theta_{2\ell-1}^*$  and  $\theta_{2\ell}^*$  are independent normal random variables, since the condition (2-76) is satisfied, i.e.

$$\cos \beta(\ell/T) \sin \beta(\ell/T) - \sin \beta(\ell/T) \cos \beta(\ell/T) = 0$$
.

Accordingly, we obtain

(D-3) 
$$\overline{\eta}^{x}(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{3} \frac{\sigma^{x}(k/T)}{\sqrt{T}} \left( e_{2k-1}^{x} \sin \frac{2\pi}{T} k t + e_{2k}^{x} \cos \frac{2\pi}{T} k t \right) ,$$

where

$$\sigma^{\aleph}(\ell/T) = \sigma_{\aleph}(\ell/T) .$$

As is evident from this expression, the phase characteristic  $g(\ell/T)$  of the system does not affect the statistical properties of the process (D-3). We shall call the process  $W^*(t)$  normal fluctuation noise with the variable intensity  $\sigma^*(\ell/T) = \sigma(f)$ .

The process  $W_{\mu,\lambda}(t)$ , acting on the input of the system, consists of short pulses. Each of these pulses produces a pulse at the output of the system, with a form determined by the complex transfer coefficient  $k(L/T)\exp[j\beta(L/T)]$ . Thus, we can regard the process  $W^{\pm}(t)$  as being formed by the superposition of a large number of similar pulses, which are randomly distributed in time. Moreover, the intensity of the process at the output of the system can be found directly from the spectral function of the output pulses. In fact, the modulus of the spectral function of the kith output pulse is

(D-5) 
$$|g_k(2\pi \ell/T)| = q_k k(\ell/T)$$
,

where qk is defined by Eq. (2-32), and is the modulus of the kth input pulse, since the input pulses are infinitely narrow, Therefore, in view of (2-29) and (D-4), we obtain

$$\sigma^{2^{2}}(\mathbf{l}/T) = \sigma^{2}k^{2}(\mathbf{l}/T) = \frac{2}{T} \sum_{k=1}^{n} q_{k}^{2} k^{2}(\mathbf{l}/T) = \frac{2}{T} \sum_{k=1}^{n} |\rho_{k}(2n\mathbf{l}/T)|^{2}.$$

<sup>1.</sup> See, e.g., V. A. Estel'nilov and A. E. Fibelayov, "Elements of Radio Engineering".
Pert 1, Svyaz'tekhizdat (1950), Section 8-5.

<sup>\*</sup> The author evidently has in mind input pulsas of the form  $a\delta(t-t_0)$ , where  $\delta(t-t_0)$  is the Dirac delta function and a>0. (Translator)

Thus, the sum of a large number of pulses which are randomly distributed in time and which have (D-5) as the modulus of their spectral function, is the normal fluctuation noise (D-3)

with intensity
$$(D-6) \qquad \sigma^*(f) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{T} \cdot \sum_{k=1}^{n} |g_k(2\pi f)|^2}$$

where the sum is over all pulses in the interval -T/2,+T/2.

It is not hard to show, by considerations similar to those given above, that the sum (D-7)  $W^{*!}(t) + W^{*!}(t) + W^{*!}(t) + \cdots$ 

of several fluctuation noises with variable intensities is also a normal fluctuation noise, with intensity given by

(D-8) 
$$\sigma^{\times 2}(f) = \sigma^{(2)}(f) + \sigma^{(2)}(f) + \sigma^{(2)}(f) + \cdots$$

where  $\sigma'(f)$ ,  $\sigma''(f)$ ,  $\sigma'''(f)$ ,... are the intensities of the noises  $W^{*'}(t)$ ,  $W^{*''}(t)$ ,  $W^{*'''}(t)$ ,... Thus, a process which consists of rendomly distributed pulses with different shapes is also a normal fluctuation noise.

We now find the effective value of the normal fluctuation noise (D-3) with variable intensity. According to the theory of Fourier series, the square of the effective value is

$$\vec{\eta}^{\frac{2}{2}}(t) = \sum_{\ell=1}^{2} \frac{\sigma^{\frac{2}{2}}(f_{\ell})}{2T} (e_{2\ell-1}^{2} + e_{2\ell}^{2})$$

where  $f_{\chi} = 1/T$ . Averaging this value over an ensemble of realizations, we obtain

$$\frac{1}{E} \frac{1}{W^{\times 2}(t)} = \sum_{\ell=1}^{3} \sigma^{\times 2} (r_{\ell}) (r_{\ell+1} - r_{\ell}) .$$

since E  $\theta_{2\ell-1}^{*2}$  = E  $\theta_{2\ell}^{*2}$  = 1, and  $f_{\ell+1}$  -  $f_{\ell}$  = 1/T. As T increases, the difference  $f_{\ell+1}$  -  $f_{\ell}$  goes to zero, and

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\
 & & & \\$$

whenco, for sufficiently large T, the effective value of the process (D-3) is

(D-9) 
$$\sqrt{E \, \overline{v^{*2}(t)}} = \sqrt{\int_{0}^{\infty} \sigma^{*2}(f) \, df}$$

If  $\sigma^*(f)$  is zero from  $f_{\underline{H}}$  on, we say that  $f_{\underline{H}}$  is the upper limit of the frequency band.